

The confproc package*

Vincent Verfaill[†]

Printed on August 1, 2011

Abstract

The `confproc` package provides a $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ document-class together with various tools (Perl and Unix/bash scripts) for building conference proceedings, or concatenating any set of PDFs with a table of contents, index and bookmarks. The $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ class derives from $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ scripts written for the DAFx-06 conference proceedings. It is mainly based on the 'pdfpages' package for PDF papers including, and the 'hyperref' package for creating proper links, bookmarks and general bibliography back references. It also uses many other packages for fine tuning of table of contents, bibliography and index of authors. Current version 0.8 is the previous 0.7 major update with key-value option management, that has now been tested with TeXLive 2011. The added value of this class is in the time it saves for you to quickly design conference proceedings. See `readme.txt` for a short overview and additional (legal) information, and `exampleN.tex` and corresponding files and scripts for an example of use.

Contents

1	Introduction	4
1.1	Short history	4
1.2	Other packages or softwares	4
1.3	A solution: the <code>confproc</code> package	5
1.4	Version history	8
1.5	To do / bugs	10
1.6	Thanks	10
2	Installation	12
2.1	Steps summary	12
2.2	Packages and compiler	12
2.3	Installation steps	14
3	Example 1 (<code>example1empty.tex</code>): A short introduction to <code>confproc</code>	16
3.1	Preamble	16
3.2	Front matter: cover page, index and table of contents	17
3.3	Main matter: the papers	17
3.4	Back matter: index of authors	18
3.5	\LaTeX runs	18
4	Example 2 (<code>example2custom.tex</code>): A not so short introduction to <code>confproc</code>	19
4.1	Document class loading	19
4.2	Options	19

*This file version number is v0.8: last revision on 2011/08/01; doc is dated 2010/08/01.

[†]`confproc.verfaill@gmail.com`

4.3	Commands and customization	30
4.4	Front matter: cover page, index and table of contents	34
4.5	Main matter: the papers	35
4.6	Back matter: index of authors	36
4.7	L ^A T _E X runs	37
5	Example 3 (example3optim.tex & others): Full working example	38
5.1	example3optim.tex: Main file	38
5.2	expapersswitch.tex: Paper switch!	48
5.3	expages.tex: Get page numbers and recompile all papers	50
5.4	exsessions.tex: Organize the conference program by sessions/day	50
5.5	exprogram.csv: Generate the conference program from a CSV file	55
5.6	exbiblio.bib: Common bibliography items	56
5.7	General bibliography	57
5.8	L ^A T _E X runs	61
6	More about building conference proceedings (for warriors)	62
6.1	Compilation steps: class option switch	62
6.2	Option management: examples of option combinations	63
6.3	Steps to generate the final version of the proceedings	64
6.4	Quality and production	67
7	Various scripts and utilities to save time	69
7.1	buildcls.sh: Build the class documentation and files	69
7.2	cleancls.sh: Clean up the class folder	71
7.3	prepareexample.sh: Prepare the example files, scripts and folders	71
7.4	generateswitch.pl: Generate the paper switch and program [Perl]	73
7.5	buildproc.sh: Build the proceedings	77
7.6	buildproce1pb.sh: Generate both paperback and electronic final versions	78
7.7	countnbpages.sh: Count the number of pages of individual PDFs	82
7.8	exportIndividualPDFs.sh: Export individual PDF papers from the proceedings	83
7.9	removeLaTeXcmds.sh: Convert L ^A T _E X strings for PDF metadata	85
7.10	paperssplitpreamble.sh: Preamble of papersplit.sh	86
7.11	papersinfo.sh: Generate individual PDFs with proper metadata	87
7.12	buildpapers.sh: Re-compile all papers	88
7.13	buildcppdfpapers.sh: Copy all PDFs papers at the right place	90
8	Implementation	92
8.1	Key-value option management	92
8.2	Options declaration	92
8.3	Options processing	96
8.4	Application of option values	96
8.5	Initialization	102
8.6	Required packages	103
8.7	Proceedings specific commands	104
8.8	Load configuration	121
	References	121
	Index	122
	Change history	125

New [v0.7] **I do not want to read all this!!!**

Yes, that's a fairly long table of contents... Let me give you some shortcuts:



New [v0.7]

- **very busy people can directly jump to section 3 for a first documented example, provided they have a full T_EXLive installation (at least 2008);**
- smart people can jump to the other and condensed documentation: `confproc-short.tex`, should they come back to this one for more details;
- curious people should rather read the not so short introduction in section 4—it provides some more details, such as the options and commands description—and the full example in section 5—which illustrates other functionalities such as the general bibliography).
- compulsive readers are welcome to read everything, starting from the introduction :-). Their comments about the contents, typos, etc. are much appreciated.
- T_EX Programmers are not encouraged to read the implementation in section 8, as my L^AT_EX programming skills are, let's say, still improving! Their comments are much appreciated too.

New [v0.7] **Color code and pictograms**

This documentation uses the following color code:

- **red:** package options; new in this version (margin notes);
- **blue:** reference, URLs, internal links to sections, chapters, etc;
- **grey:** portions of example code that do not differ from similar portions of the last example previously described in the documentation;
- important things to pay attention at are noticed with this 'danger' margin sign;
- new elements in current version are acknowledged with this margin note.



New [v0.7]

N.B.: this code documentation also uses the `colordoc` package, by Federico Garcia (CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/colordoc](https://ctan.org/pkg/colordoc)).

1 Introduction

The provided `confproc` class is based on several great packages, among which `pdfpages` [11] by Andreas Matthias (IMHO, the most useful package to build proceedings) together with `hyperref` [10] by Sebastian Rahtz and Heiko Oberdiek (to manage all PDF and hyperlinks issues). So, you may consider `confproc` as a time saving package to faster design conference proceedings or a compilation of PDFs (such as an article collection).

1.1 Short history

When editing the DAFx-06 proceedings, I developed a set of $\LaTeX 2\epsilon$ commands to produce the best quality proceedings we could achieve thanks to $\LaTeX 2\epsilon$. This was documented on the DAFx-06 website [14] and in a technical report [15]. Later on, I created a shorter example version, that has been used as a basis by other proceedings editors for their own needs (LAC 2007, ICAD 2007, DAFx-07, JMUI). For better sharing of this example with other $\LaTeX 2\epsilon$ users, I converted the set of $\LaTeX 2\epsilon$ commands into a document class—thanks to the information provided by the $\LaTeX 3$ team [2]—and then into a package producing all necessary files (*i.e.* the class, the documentation, the example, the scripts, etc)—using `Docstrip` [3] together with the documentation by Scott Pakin [1]. Then, after using this class with new scripts for the ICMC'09 conference proceedings, I wrapped it up into a package (`.dtx` file) that generates all needed files.

1.2 Other packages or softwares

I tried several alternative solutions in the fall of 2005. Indeed, there are so many talented people out there developing great \LaTeX packages that I would have preferred to use anybody else's solution! Unfortunately, I have not been able to make any of them work in the way I needed. So I before finally decided to create my own package.

N.B.: since the following information dates back to the fall of 2005, some of the following packages may have evolved in the meantime. Please take a look at them in order to get the latest information (which I obviously did not do)!

1.2.1 Adobe Acrobat

Eventhough it is nothing related to a \LaTeX package, nor a free application, the Acrobat Professional software [8] is a solution to create proceedings with proper internal links for a set of PDF papers with internal links. Some useful explanations will help to understand all that has to be done [5]. Indeed, you have to do all the links for the table of contents, the index of authors and the general bibliography by hand. This sounds like hours of work! Would you really plan to do that, and potentially having to re-do it all when discovering any small error, as it happens during both the editing and the printing processes? Any \LaTeX solution would provide automatization of proceedings building.

1.2.2 The `combine` package

The one I would have loved to be able to use in 2006 is the `combine` package by Peter Wilson [9], as it was especially designed for the purpose of combining articles into proceedings. It would have been perfect if it did not have incompatibilities with our `dafx06.sty` proceedings template (or conference style), since many commands are added in the header file. I encountered problems with the `hyperref` package as well as some minor problems with `fancyhdr.sty`: eventually, no paper was inserted in the proceedings, and the \LaTeX run would always fail (stopped without any notice during the first paper inclusion). Very frustrating, as it was too late for changing our conference proceedings style to make them compatible with `combine`. I contacted Peter Wilson, to which I am indebt for all the precious advices he gave me, among which was the use of a concurrent solution, *i.e.* the `pdfpages` package!

1.2.3 The pdfpages package

As no magic solution do exist (yet?), the pdfpages package by Andreas Matthias [11] is a very easy way to combine several PDF documents into a single document. Unfortunately, where combine seemed to be able to preserve internal references of each paper, pdfpages does not provide such feature, as papers are included as a set of single PDF pages. As I am not a specialist of the PDF format and so on, I can imagine that it is extremely complex to achieve such a feature. Anyway, it means that if your original PDF documents had internal links, hyper-references, links to URL, etc, they will simply be all broken.

With this in mind, we used this package as a basis (so it then is not a concurrent), especially for the following feature: clicking on a page in the proceedings will open the corresponding paper (with its proper internal links). Simple!

1.2.4 The mini style

The mini.sty package [6] does a very good job for concatenating abstracts in a single proceedings document. However, it is not suited (to my knowledge) for conference proceedings, where each paper has to be compiled with the conference style and has its very own title, authors, etc. (that cannot be inserted as (sub)sections).

1.2.5 The AMS editor package

The editor package from the AMS [7] provides information and documents to produce both the front end and the back end of proceedings, which is of great help to understand all that has to be done (particularly the table of contents and the re-numbering of all papers). However, as they explicitly say it, there is no mechanism to assemble the files together.

1.3 A solution: the confproc package

1.3.1 Short description

Using all the knowledge I could find around (and in the previously cited documentations about how to do a good PDF document for the proceedings), together with many tricks I found, this L^AT_EX class provides the following features:

1. automatically generates the whole proceedings, after changing any of its paper information (thanks to L^AT_EX!);
2. concatenates papers by inserting several individual documents into one document (with the pdfpages package);
3. provides ‘clickable’ links (hyper-references) from the table of contents, the index of authors and the full bibliography to access to the corresponding page(s) (with the hyperref [10] package);
4. provides access to individual papers: a click on any paper’s page opens the corresponding PDF paper (that still has its internal links); this feature comes with the pdfpages package.
5. left-aligned page numbers in the table of contents (using the titlesec) package;
6. displays the index of authors with two or three columns (hack derived from twocolindex, and using the multicolumn package);
7. organizes the bookmarks by proceedings’ sections: the preamble, the table of contents, the days/sessions, the full bibliography, and the index of authors. Also, authors’ names appear under their relative paper title.

8. organizes the table of contents: only the index of authors appearing in the table of contents (using the `tocbibind` package);
9. provides full bibliography, or at least help and informations for you to build one, with right-flushed back-reference page numbers.
10. enables fast \LaTeX run, using the `draft` option of `pdfpages`. Useful when repetitively correcting errors, changing the layout (index, bookmarks, table of contents), merging bibliographies, etc. However, note that with this option, `pdfpages` does not generate the bookmark data. So, do not use it for final \LaTeX runs!
11. orders the packages. As `hyperref` [10] redefines most of \LaTeX internal commands, a lot of care has to be taken when ordering the insertion of packages, otherwise some of the features can disappear.
12. gives information about the merging process involved to generate a general bibliography, as well as about production issues.
13. offers various bash/Unix scripts to help automatize the making of conference proceedings.

1.3.2 Pros

There are numerous advantages with the `confproc` class:

- help: it simplifies operations such as generating a conference program as the table of contents, generating the index of authors, generating the bookmarks, having the same layout for the proceedings as for the paper templates;
- convenient: it provides an all-in-one package (with various useful scripts);
- time saving: directly and elegantly re-use all the tricks previously collected or developed;
- customization: it provides several commands and options to customize your document;
- package ordering: it correctly inserts the `hyperref` package as the last one (all internal macros are redefined), except for packages requiring to be inserted after (like `hypcap`);
- reliability: the `confproc` package is getting older and mature, and has been used for 8 issues. Its documentaton and option set make it now easy to use (however, editing conference proceedings is always a big job).

1.3.3 Cons

There are also disadvantages, among which:

- package ordering: the order of package insertion is fixed, and may not be changed: `hyperref` has to be inserted last because it redefines many internal. After you add packages in your document, this will not be the case anymore!!! This is the main limitation I can think of, and would appreciate any feedback, comments, tricks, that would help to resolve this issue.
- PDFs: `pdfpages` inserts PDFs as vectorial images (my understanding), so internal links are broken and the text cannot anymore be copied/paste. Hopefully, clicking on a paper page from the proceedings opens the original file!
- customization is a bit limited to the class designer's defined commands (which are hopefully expanding in each version);
- does not deal with parallel session programs.

1.3.4 Hall of fame

Under one of its various forms, this package has been used for (at least) the following conferences:

- version 0.5 (class/package):
 - August 2009: Proceedings of the International Computer Music Conference (ICMC 2009) — Montreal, Qc, Canada; used by Gary Scavone and myself; www.icmc2009.org/
- version 0.4e (class/package):
 - September 2010: Proceedings of the 5th Robotour Workshop — Bratislava, Slovakia; used by Richard Balogh; <http://www.robotika.sk/robotour/zbornik/Robotour2010.pdf>
 - July 2010: Proceedings of the International Society for Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing (ISPRS) Technical Commission VII Symposium: “100 Years ISPRS — Advancing Remote Sensing Science”, Volume XXXVIII, Part 7A and 7B — Vienna, Austria; used by Alexandra von Beringe, Peter Dorninger, Sebastian Flöry, Josef Jansa, Clemens Nothegger, Norbert Pfeifer, Andreas Roncat;
 - * Part 7A: www.isprs.org/proceedings/XXXVIII/part7/a/proceedings_partAweb.pdf
 - * Part 7B: www.isprs.org/proceedings/XXXVIII/part7/b/proceedings_partBweb.pdf
 - June 2010: Proceedings of the 11th UC Systemwide 2010 Bioengineering Symposium University of California — Davis; California, USA; used by Angélique Louie; <http://www.be.ucsd.edu/bicsymposium/program>
 - March 2010: Proceedings of the Workshop on Inverse Problems for Waves — Palaiseau, France; used by Armin Lechleiter; www.cmap.polytechnique.fr/~defi/mmsn2010/MMSN-2010.pdf
 - September 2009: Pre-Proceedings of the UC09 Hypercomputation Workshop — Ponta Delgada, The Azores, Portugal; used by Mike Stannett; hypercomputation.net/uc09/preproc.pdf
 - August 2009: Book of abstracts of the 16th European Young Statisticians Meeting (EYSM 2009) — Bucharest, Romania; used by Luiza Bădin and Roxana Ciomara; www.eysm2009.ase.ro/
 - June 2009: Nanophotonics Down Under 2009: Devices and Applications (SMONP: Sir Mark Oliphant Conference on NanoPhotonics) — Melbourne, Australia; used by Michael James Ventura; www.smonp2009.com/
- version 0.4f (scripts):
 - 2008 and 2009: Numediart’s Quartely Progress Scientific Report (QPSR); used by Christian Frisson;
 - * Vol. 2(4), Dec. 2009: www.numediart.org/docs/numediart_2009_s08_qpsr.pdf
 - * Vol. 2(3), Sept. 2009: www.numediart.org/docs/numediart_2009_s07_qpsr.pdf
 - * Vol. 2(2), June 2009: www.numediart.org/docs/numediart_2009_s06_qpsr.pdf
 - * Vol. 2(1), March 2009: www.numediart.org/docs/numediart_2009_s05_qpsr.pdf
 - * Vol. 1(4), Dec. 2008: www.numediart.org/docs/numediart_2008_s04_qpsr.pdf
 - * Vol. 1(3), Sept. 2008: www.numediart.org/docs/numediart_2008_s03_qpsr.pdf
 - July 16 - August 10, 2007: Proceedings of the eNTERFACE’07 Workshop on Multimodal Interfaces — Istanbul, Turkey; used by Christian Frisson and Rémy Lehembre; <http://www.cmpe.boun.edu.tr/enterface07/results.php>
- version 0.2e (scripts):

- 2008: Numediart’s Quartely Progress Scientific Report (QPSR); used by Christian Frisson;
 - * Vol. 1(2), June 2008: www.numediart.org/docs/numediart_2008_s02_qpsr.pdf
 - * Vol. 1(1), March 2008: www.numediart.org/docs/numediart_2008_s01_qpsr.pdf
- September 2007: 10th International Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx-07) in Bordeaux, France; used by Sylvain Marchand; dafx.labri.fr/
- 2007: Journal on Multimodal User Interfaces (JMUI) Vol. 1(1) and 1(2); used by Christian Frisson; www.jmui.org/index.php/JMUI/issue/view/1/showToc
- June 2007: 13th International Conference on Auditory Display (ICAD-07) — Montreal, Qc, Canada; used by Gary Scavone; www.music.mcgill.ca/icad2007/proceedings.php
- version 0.1 (scripts):
 - March 2007: 5th International Linux Audio Conference (LAC2007) — Berlin, Germany; used by Marije Baalman; www.kgw.tu-berlin.de/~lac2007/proceedings.shtml
 - September 2006: 9th International Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx-06) — Montreal, Qc, Canada; used by myself; www.dafx.ca/dafx06_proceedings.html

1.4 Version history

Here is a list of versions (red versions are public releases):

- v0.8** last version is a minor revision, that:
 - version 0.8 has been tested for \TeX Live 2011 (as of August 1st, 2011);
 - corrects the author’s email address;
 - adds other conference proceedings to the hall of fames.
- v0.7** major revision. It took me a while to add functionalities and modify the option interface (as kindly suggested by Andreas Matthias more than a year ago):
 - class design:
 - class options: interface re-designed, now uses key-values style (with `kvoptions` package);
 - tested with \TeX Live 2008, 2009, and 2010 (as of July 2010);
 - code clarified, using key-values (with the `keyval` package) but also `\ifthenelse` (from the `xifthen` package);
 - PDF insertion:
 - command `\procpaper` with 1 argument (file name) and 8 optional arguments replaces `\insertprocpaper` with its 9 arguments. This re-design also makes use of key-values style options (using `keyval`);
 - removed the limitation to a minimum of 2 pages and a maximum of 8 pages (now 1 to anything);
 - class options:
 - `hyperref/geometry`: can now directly pass options to the `hyperref` and `geometry` packages with the new `hyperref={option list}` and `geometry={option list}` options;
 - added `papers=empty` option and mode. This offers a much faster fake paper insertion, compared to `papers=draft` (`draft` mode of `pdfpages`, but not checking if pages actually exist);
 - added new options for layout fine tuning and debug;

`\procpaper`
`\insertprocpaper`

`hyperref`
`geometry`
`papers=empty`
`papers=draft`

binding	* <code>binding=Xmm</code> to indicate the binding of the paperback version;
checktitle checkauthor	* <code>checktitle</code> and <code>checkauthor</code> to overlay the title and author list onto the 1st page of each paper, for checking the consistency of the table of contents with individual PDF papers;
showmarginlines	* <code>showmarginlines</code> to draw the margin lines (so that one can match each page fits the template);
showpapernumber	* <code>showpapernumber</code> to show the paper number below the page number;
colorheaders	* <code>colorheaders=red</code> to color the header/footer;
pdftk	* <code>pdftk</code> to output commands for later setting PDF metadata of individual PDFs;
verbose	* <code>verbose</code> and <code>debug</code> are now different options, and their output texts have been clarified and now makes use of <code>\PackageInfo</code> and <code>\PackageWarning</code> .

– options’ default values: reset to simplify the most possible the first tests;

- documentation:
 - added a 2-minutes documentation (`confproc-short.tex`) that summarizes commands and options;
 - added a second (and simpler) example;
 - improved & re-organized for incremental learning, and clarified with margin notes and color code (using gray/black color code to show differences between successive versions of the code, and using the ‘colordoc’ package for color code);
- scripts: added some bash/Unix scripts for more functionalities, such as:
 - `buildprocelpb.sh`: for optimized example (generates both paperback and electronic versions of proceedings).
 - `prepareexample.sh`: prepare example files and scripts.
 - `exportIndividualPDFs.sh`: extracts individual paper with new page numbers and proper metadata;
 - `countnbpages.sh`: counts number of pages in each individual PDF paper.

v0.6 undistributed: integrated and enhanced changes made for ICMC 2009;

v0.5 undistributed: hacked version with `kvoptions` plus many fixes for ICMC 2009;

- v0.4e**
- enhance package by redefining book commands;
 - fixed several issues;
 - define page layout with the `geometry` package (thanks to Will Robertson);

v0.4d changes history: re-organized using macro environment (shorter and clearer);

v0.4c bug correction: author is back in the bookmark (disappeared in v0.4a);

- v0.4b**
- `debug`: `\hypersetup` evaluated only at the document beginning (then taking into account the user changes in the PDF metadata);
 - remove formatting from footer and name-like commands: author, title, etc. (suggested by Will Robertson);
 - use `mathptmx` package instead of `times` package (thanks to Will Robertson);
 - use `nth` package instead of `\textsuperscript` command (thanks to Will Robertson);
 - redefine `\thebibliography` to avoid inserting a phantom item to set the introductory paragraph (thanks to Will Robertson);

- v0.4a**
- allows to insert 1-page long papers (did not work in v0.3 and previous);

- instead of replacing each paper’s last page by the list of its bibliography items, print them on top of the header of the last page;
- incorporate font style changes to the class: redefining the `\mainmatter`, `\backmatter`, `\thebibliography`, `\thecontents` commands (thanks to Will Robertson);

v0.3 first released version of the package.

v0.2e first distributed version of the scripts.

v0.1 first version of the scripts (DAFx-06).

1.5 To do / bugs

At this time this package offers many more features than the original scripts did. It looks ‘complete’ to me, and fully functional as is. I however would like to debug/add the following functionalities:

- backward incompatibility: citation items lost if using old command `\procinsertpaper` (up to version 0.5)
- bibliography: fix the right-flush issue that sometimes happen for a small number of back-references in the bibliography, where 1 or 2 or a longer list of back-references are placed onto a next line whereas there is enough space on the previous line.
- index/bibliography: correct the pdf link. Clicking on that link should go to the top of the page of the index/bibliography, and not to a position just below the `\indexname` in the text.
- bookmarks/TOC: find a mechanism to customize the table of contents bookmark entry by setting the argument of `\pdfbookmark[0]{Program}{contents}` (does not work yet because `\pdfbookmark` does not accept commands as arguments).
- packages: provide a mechanism for inserting packages *before/after* the `hyperref` package, directly from the example file without having to hack the class (including the `hyperref` package with `\AtBeginDocument` did not work).
- TOC: handle programs with parallel sessions (table of contents);
- use a makefile instead of `buildproc.sh`, `buildprocelpb.sh` (that would looks a bit more professional);
- generate `confproc-short.tex` from `confproc.dtx`;
- write a shorter version of `confproc.dtx` that does not loose any information, but rather loses useless redundancies and gains in ease of reading or finding specific information;
- miscellaneous: fix bugs, misspellings, etc. (never ending task).

N.B.: none of those functionalities/improvements is written on my agenda...

1.6 Thanks

Big thanks go to various people: Gary Scavone for offering me to edit the ICMC 2009 proceedings; Andreas Matthias for suggesting in 2008 to simplify the options using `keyval` (yes, I’m quite slow); Philippe Depalle for offering me to edit the DAFx-06 proceedings; Julien Boissinot for asking “Why don’t you make it a class?” in 2006; Eoin Brazil for being so enthusiastic about the package; Will Robertson for suggesting many improvements (v0.4a–e) while writing a `PracTeX` description of the package [16]; and the courageous guinea-pigs of the first versions (Michael James

Ventura, Gary Scavone, Sylvain Marchand, Marije Baalman, Christian Klünder and Christian Frisson). I also thank Andre Dierker for his example `fbithesis.dtx`¹ that I used as a start to build this `confproc.dtx` package/documentation file; his example helped me so much to learn all this dtx stuff.

¹`fbithesis.dtx`: [CTANmacros/latex/contrib/fbithesis/](https://ctan.org/ctan/CTAN/macros/latex/contrib/fbithesis/)

2 Installation

2.1 Steps summary

1. check that you have all required packages (see sec. 2.2). Using any T_EXLive distribution ensures nothing else has to be installed!
2. generate the documentation: `'latex confproc.dtx'`;
3. generate the `confproc.cls` file: `'latex confproc.ins'`;
4. finish the documentation: `'latex confproc.dtx'` (two times).
N.B.: the `buildcls.sh` script implements step 2–4 (+ generates index and bibliography).
5. option: move `confproc.cls`, `confproc.pdf` and `exampleN.tex` and all the other example-related generated files into another folder (*i.e.* `examples/`).
N.B.: the `prepareexample.sh` bash/Unix script prepares example files for you (see sec. 7.3).

Installation steps are explained with more details in sec. 2.3.

2.2 Packages and compiler

Some packages are required for `confproc` to work. If using a full T_EX distribution such as T_EXLive 2008–2010, all necessary packages (including `confproc`, which installation process is described in the next section) are already installed on your system. Otherwise, you'll find the most recent versions at CTAN², at the address provided below for each package with its version number that corresponds to the T_EXLive 2008 distribution. Note that `confproc` has also been successfully tested with T_EXLive 2009 as of Sept 14, 2009, and preT_EXLive 2010 in July 2010.

2.2.1 Essential packages required by `confproc`

1. L^AT_EX 2_ε (at least 1994/12/01) and pdfT_EXk Version 3.1415926-1.40.9 (Web2C 7.5.7);
CTAN: [macros/latex/base](http://www.ctan.org/macros/latex/base)
2. `book` (at least 2005/09/16 v1.4f): standard document class on which `confproc` is based;
CTAN: [macros/latex/unpacked/](http://www.ctan.org/macros/latex/unpacked/)
3. `kvoptions` and `kvoptions-patch` (at least 2009/04/10 v3.1): key-value class options management; CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/kvoptions.dtx](http://www.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/kvoptions.dtx)
4. `xifthen` (at least 2009/04/17 v1.3): clearer code for if/then tests;
CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/xifthen/](http://www.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/xifthen/)
5. `pdfpages` (at least 2009/02/07 v0.4g): to include the proceedings articles as PDF documents;
CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/pdfpages/pdfpages.dtx](http://www.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/pdfpages/pdfpages.dtx)
6. `hyperref` [10] (at least 2009/05/01 v6.78r): to add hypertext links in the PDF file;
CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/hyperref.dtx](http://www.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/hyperref.dtx)
7. `geometry` (at least 2008/12/21 v4.2): to simplify the page layout settings;
CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/geometry/geometry.dtx](http://www.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/geometry/geometry.dtx)
8. `color` (at least 2005/11/14 v1.0j): to provide color links with `hyperref`;
CTAN: [macros/latex/required/graphics/color.dtx](http://www.ctan.org/macros/latex/required/graphics/color.dtx)

²Comprehensive T_EX Archive Network: www.ctan.org/

9. `fancyhdr` (at least 2005/03/22 v3.2): to set the proceedings header/footer so as to match the paper template style, if any; CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/fancyhdr/fancyhdr.sty](#)
10. `index` (at least 2004/01/20 v4.2beta): to produce the index of authors; CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/index/index.dtx](#)
11. `tocbibind` (at least 2003/03/13 v1.5g): to change the `\indexname` command and disable automatic insertion of index in the table of contents; CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/tocbibind/tocbibind.dtx](#)
12. `titletoc` (at least 2007/08/12 v1.6): to change the table of contents layout CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/titlesec/titletoc.sty](#)
13. `multitoc` (at least 1999/06/08 v2.01): to provide a two column table of contents CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/ms/multitoc.dtx](#)
14. `multicol` (at least 2006/05/18 v1.6g): to provide multi-column index of authors CTAN: [macros/latex/required/tools/multicol.dtx](#)
15. `sectsty` (at least 2002/02/25 v2.0.2): `\chapterfont` used to give the same headers/footers to the table of contents; CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/sectsty/sectsty.dtx](#)

2.2.2 Other packages successfully used with `confproc` in the examples

1. `hypcap` (at least 2006/02/20 v1.5): for proper hyperref anchors to table and figure captions; CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/hypcap.dtx](#)
2. `graphicx` (at least 1996/08/05 v1.0a): to include logos with `\includegraphics`; CTAN: [macros/latex/required/graphics/graphicx.dtx](#)
3. `newapa` (at least 1991/06/13 v2.0): for the general bibliography (N.B.: it is slightly modified after insertion); CTAN: [biblio/bibtex/contrib/newapa/](#)
4. `newapave` (at least 2006/07/31 v2.1), included in the `confproc` package: DAFx-06 style for the general bibliography (year at the end, before the right-flushed back-references); CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/conferences/confproc/](#)
5. `setspace` (at least 2000/12/01 v6.7): to change the line spacing of welcome letters; CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/setspace/setspace.sty](#)
6. `inputenc` (at least 2006/05/05 v1.1b): to change the input encoding, for instance to run \LaTeX on a document with accents (for the authors' names and the paper titles); CTAN: [macros/latex/base/inputenc.dtx](#)
7. `fontenc` (at least 2005/09/27 v1.99g): to change the font encoding; CTAN: [macros/latex/unpacked/fontenc.sty](#)
8. `mathptmx` (at least 2005/04/12 PSNFSS-v9.2a): to change the default \LaTeX font to 'Times' for a better PDF display; CTAN: [macros/latex/required/psnfss/](#)
9. `nth` (at least 2002/02/27): to use superscript ordinals in the proceedings name (9th); CTAN: [macros/generic/misc/nth.sty](#)
10. `layout` (at least 2000/09/25 v1.2c): to finely tune you document header and footer so that they match those of the paper templates; CTAN: [macros/latex/required/tools/layout.dtx](#)
11. `layouts` (at least 2004/10/25 v2.6c): to check the fine tuning of the table of contents layout (N.B.: if inserted too early, the table of contents layout will not properly display); CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/layouts/layouts.dtx](#)

2.3 Installation steps

Download this package at CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/conferences/confproc/](http://www.ctan.org/ctan/macros/latex/contrib/conferences/confproc/). It should already contain the following files:

- package-related files:
 - `confproc.dtx`: main package file (the first \LaTeX run `pdflatex confproc.dtx` generates various other files)
 - `readme.txt`: package introduction file;
 - `buildcls.sh`: bash/Unix script to generate the class files and documentation (\LaTeX run: `pdflatex confproc.dtx`);
 - `confproc.ins`: package file generated from the first \LaTeX run, used to generate example files, index styles, etc (\LaTeX run: `pdflatex confproc.dtx`);
 - `confproc.cls`: package class generated from the first \LaTeX run, used by all example files;
 - `newapave.bst`: bibliography style for `confproc`;
 - `newapave.sty`: bibliography style for `confproc`; generated under the `newapave2.sty` name and renamed by the `buildcls.sh` script.
 - `confproc1.ist` and `confproc2.ist`: examples of index style files;
- package documentation:
 - `confproc.pdf`: full documentation (this file); use the `makedoc.sh` bash script to regenerate it with proper index, version history, bibliography;
 - `confproc-short.pdf`: summary documentation;
 - `confproc-short.tex`: summary documentation (original \LaTeX file);
 - `confproc_diag.pdf`: figure used in the documentations, which illustrates proceedings building and compilation steps;
 - `makedoc.sh`: bash/Unix script to generate the package full documentation;
- package example:
 - `papers/`: folder with example files (papers);
 - `pictures/`: folder with an example of proceedings cover.

The provided `confproc.dtx` file is an ‘one-file-contains-it-all’: it contains the `.cls` class file, its `.pdf` documentation, a customizable driver for the documentation, the `.ins` batch file, a complete example, and a ‘read me’ file.

To install the package:

1. run `confproc.dtx` through \LaTeX . This will generate the batch file `confproc.ins` (only if it does not already exists: if willing to re-generate it, first delete the one that pre-exists) and a `readme.txt`. Additionally the documentation (`confproc.pdf`) is generated (to get the cross-references right, you have to rerun this twice, however).
2. run the newly generated `confproc.ins` through \LaTeX to do the actual installation. This will (re)generate the `confproc.cls` class file, the example files³ and example-related files⁴,

³Example files: `example1empty.tex`, `example2custom.tex`, `example3optim.tex`, `example4optim.tex`

⁴Example-related files: `exclasspre.tex`, `exclasslastel.tex`, `exclasslastpb.tex`, `expages.tex`, `exsessions.tex`, `expapersswitch.tex`, `exbiblio.bib` and `exprogram.csv`

build scripts⁵, the documentation driver (`confproc.drv`) and a sample configuration file (`confproc.cfg`).

3. to finish the installation it is recommended to move the documentation (`confproc.pdf` and `confproc-short.pdf`) and the example-related files to where you collect the documentations. With a TDS compliant L^AT_EX installation this would for example be:

```
$(TEXMF)/doc/tex/latex/confproc
```

4. to use the examples:

- move all `ex*. *` files together with the example scripts⁶ and the `papers/` and `picture/` folders to the `example/` folder (thus hiding all the mess in the same place ;-));
- place in `example/` a copy of the following class files: `confproc.cls`, `confproc1.ist`, `confproc2.ist`, `newapave.bst`, `newapave.sty`;
- create a `pdftk_info/` folder there, and move the `expages.tex` file into `papers/`;
- change the permissions to 'execute' (`chmod +x . . .`) for example scripts⁷.

N.B.: the `prepareexample.sh` bash/Unix script (see sec. 7.3) does it all for you.

5. for a demonstration of the possibilities of `confproc` see the `example*.tex` file and run them through L^AT_EX. For a more complete demonstration, use the `buildproc.sh` (see sec. 7.5) and `buildprocelpb.sh` (see sec. 7.6) and bash/Unix scripts, that will make for you all the necessary steps to provide the final version of the example proceedings.

The '`latex confproc.dtx`'-run above will by default generate the full documentation (with complete listing of the documented source code, command index and change history). If you need the 'user' documentation, you may edit `confproc.drv` to meet your needs (never edit `confproc.dtx` itself!). For more information on the enhanced documentation see `confproc.drv` or `readme.txt`.

⁵Class and proceedings build scripts in Perl: `generateswitch.pl`; Unix: `buildcls.sh`, `cleancls.sh`, `buildproc.sh`, `buildprocelpb.sh`, `buildpapers.sh`, `buildcppdfpapers.sh`, `countnbpages.sh`, `exportIndividualPDFs.sh`, `papersinfo.sh`, `paperssplitpreamble.sh`, `prepareexample.sh`, `removeLaTeXcmds.sh`

⁶Perl: `generateswitch.pl`; Unix: `buildproc.sh`, `buildprocelpb.sh`, `buildpapers.sh`, `buildcppdfpapers.sh`, `countnbpages.sh`, `exportIndividualPDFs.sh`, `papersinfo.sh`, `paperssplitpreamble.sh`, `prepareexample.sh`, `removeLaTeXcmds.sh`

⁷Example scripts: `buildproc.sh`, `buildprocelpb.sh`, `generateswitch.pl`, `exportIndividualPDFs.sh`, `papersinfo.sh`, `paperssplitpreamble.sh`

3 Example 1 (example1empty.tex)

A short introduction to confproc (2 minutes)

For people that are very excited about this package, here is a 2-minute guide, that gives a quick feeling of *what can be done with confproc*. Next two sections provide a detailed description of the package (sec. 4) as well as a full working example with index, general bibliography, etc. (sec. 5). A good advice that could be given is “Do as you would do for a book”: table of contents, headers and footers, index, etc.

3.1 Preamble

Consider we are writing a book with several parts (days) and chapter (sessions). Then, we want to set its title, author, a table of contents (or list of days/parts, sessions/chapters and papers/sections), as well as an index. Then, using the same usual commands, the proceedings will use the code provided below.

3.1.1 Document class and options

We first insert the document class with reasonable options (that we will not look at right now):

```
1 \*example1empty
2 \documentclass[letterpaper,10pt,twoside,%
3   electronic,% [printed] | electronic
4   papers=countpages,% empty | draft | [final] | countpages
5   paperselec=all, %[all] | p_001 | p_fake
6   hyperref={bookmarksdepth=1,bookmarksopen,bookmarksopenlevel=0,%
7     linkcolor=blue,urlcolor=blue},%
8   geometry={text={175truemm,226truemm},% A4 & letter
9     inner=0.805in,top=29.15mm,bottom=24.5mm,footskip=9.68mm,voffset=-5mm},%letter
10]{confproc}
```

3.1.2 Packages

We then insert packages for input and output font encoding, Times font selection and miscellaneous:

```
11 \usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
12 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
13 \usepackage{mathptmx}
14 \usepackage[super]{nth}
15
```

3.1.3 Customization

We redefine proceedings-specific commands to customize the document to our needs:

```
16 \renewcommand{\procpdfauthor}{\color{red}[Proceedings editor], [University]}
17 \renewcommand{\procpdftitle}{\color{red}[Acronym] Proceedings}
18 \renewcommand{\procpdfsubject}{\color{red}Proc. of the Xth International Conference %
19   on [Nice Topic] ([Acronym]), [City], [Country], [Dates]}
20
21 \renewcommand{\procchead}{} %
22 \renewcommand{\proclhead}{\em \small \procpdfsubject}
23
24 \author{\procpdfauthor}
25 \title{\procpdftitle}
26 \date{\today}
```

We also define the paper path:

```
27 \renewcommand{\PAPERPATH}{papers/}
```

3.2 Front matter: cover page, index and table of contents

Ready to start? We generate the index and start the document front matter:

```
28 \makeindex
29
30 %%===== PROCEEDINGS =====
31 \begin{document}
32 \frontmatter
33 \setcounter{page}{1}
34 \pdfbookmark[0]{Preamble}{preamble}
35 \pdfbookmark[1]{Cover}{cover}
36 \maketitle
37 \newpage
38
```

It is now time to insert the conference program:

```
39 \otherpagestyle
40 \tableofcontents
41
```

3.3 Main matter: the papers

We then switch to the list of papers, organized by day and session:

```
42 %%==== BEGINNING OF PAPERS ====
43 \mainmatter
44
45 \procdays{Day 1}
46 \session{Oral Session 1}
47 \procpaper[switch=45,%
48   title={Templates for One Author},%
49   author={Alfred Alabama},%
50   index={\index{Alabama, Alfred}},%
51 ]{p_001}
52 \procpaper[switch=21,%
53   title={Templates for One Author with Two Affiliations},%
54   author={Bob Boogie-Woogie},%
55   index={\index{Boogie-Woogie, Bob}},%
56 ]{p_003}
57 \session{Poster Session 1}
58 \procpaper[switch=33,%
59   title = {Templates for Two Authors},%
60   author={Alfred Alabama, Chris Christmas},%
61   index={\index{Alabama, Alfred}\index{Christmas, Chris}},%
62 ]{p_005}
63
64 \procdays{Day 2}
65 \session{Oral Session 2}
66 \procpaper[switch=75,%
67   title={Templates for Three Authors},%
68   author={Bob Boogie-Woogie, Chris Christmas, Don Didon},%
69   index={\index{Boogie-Woogie, Bob}\index{Christmas, Chris}%
70     \index{Didon, Don}},%
```

```

71   ]{p_007}
72   \procpaper[switch=27,%
73     title={Templates f'or F'o\"ur ÃAuthors},%
74     author={J{o{ }hn J\"oe, K'e~{n}t K~{i}ng, L'ou L'ou,%
75       M'anfr'ed J. M^ost\u{e}k{i},
76     index={\index{J\"oe, J{o{ }hn}\index{K~{i}ng, K'e~{n}t}%
77       \index{L'ou, L'ou}\index{M^ost\u{e}k{i}, M'anfr'ed J.}},
78   ]{p_009}
79
80%%==== END OF PAPERS ====

```

3.4 Back matter: index of authors

We are almost done: we finish by inserting the authors' index before closing the document!

```

81 \backmatter
82 \insertindex
83 \end{document}
84 </exampleempty>

```

3.5 L^AT_EX runs

To build this example, run the following L^AT_EX steps:

1. generates the first .aux and .idx files (use option `papers=countpages` as the paper's number of pages are not specified):
`pdflatex exampleempty.tex`
2. generates the author index:
`makeindex -s confproc2.ist exampleempty.idx`
3. inserts table of contents and index, and update their page numbers for next run (use option `papers=countpages` again):
`pdflatex exampleempty.tex`
4. final L^AT_EX run inserting table of contents and index with proper page numbers; useful only if the table of contents is longer than a single page (`papers=counpages`):
`pdflatex exampleempty.tex`

4 Example 2 (example2custom.tex)

A not so short introduction to confproc (2 hours or so)

Here is provided exhaustive information about *what can be done* with confproc, but also *how to do so*, as well as an example file (example2custom.tex) that makes use of this information. It requires an hour or so to go through. This file is based on example1empty.tex, and adds all the necessary customization so that the proceedings now look great. We present its code: grey parts are identical to example1empty.tex, whereas black parts are the modified lines.

4.1 Document class loading

The class is loaded with:

```
\documentclass{confproc}
```

To modify the default behavior of confproc, use options:

```
\documentclass[<options>]{confproc}
```

All available options are described below in subsection 4.2.

4.2 Options

There are two types of options:

- some are specific to the confproc class (sometimes also passed to other packages),
- others are simply passed to the book class, the hyperref or pdfpages packages.



A summary of all options is given in Tab. 1 and 2. Note that *for alternative options values (indicated as a list of items separated by vertical bars: |), the default value appears between squared brackets.*

4.2.1 Log and options

New [v0.7]

With the `verbose=true` option, the confproc package prints the following text, that shows the current option settings is always added to the log window:

```
-----
| | Document formatting:
| | ___ letterpaper
| | ___ twoside=true
| | ___ twosidepapers=true
| | Proceedings-specific formatting:
| | ___ electronic=true (file version)
| | ___ binding=(for printed version)
| | ___ papers=final(paper insertion)
| | ___ headers=allpages(header add to pages)
| | List of papers:
| | ___ paperselec=all
| | Lists (toc, bib, index):
| | ___ twocoltoc=false (=onecoltoc)
| | ___ tocnum=left
| | ___ twocolbib=true
| | ___ bib=none
| | ___ twocolindex=true
| | Help for layout design:
| | ___ checkauthor=false (do not add author list to 1st page)
```

```

| | ____ checktitle=false (do not add title to 1st page)
| | ____ showpapernumber=false (do not add paper number)
| | ____ movepagenumber=false (do not move paper number)
| | ____ showmarginlines=false (do not add template format)
| | ____ colorheaders=black(color for header/footer)
| | Verbose:
| | ____ debug=true (for hyperref)
| | ____ verbose=false (for confproc+hyperref)
| | ____ pdftk=false (for use with pdftk to add PDF metadata)
| | passed to hyperref: bookmarksdepth=1,bookmarksopen,bookmarksopenlevel=0,linkcolor=colorforlink,urlcolor=colorforurl
| | passed to geometry: text={175truemm,226truemm},inner=0.805in,top=29.15mm,bottom=24.5mm,footskip=9.68mm,voffset=-5mm
-----

```

4.2.2 Document formatting (book-specific)

The following options define some of the general document formatting via the book class:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <p>a4paper
letterpaper</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • [a4paper] letterpaper selects the paper format: A4 (European) or letter (North American). The option is passed to the book and hyperref packages. |
| <p>10pt, 11pt, 12pt</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • [10pt] \| 11pt \| 12pt selects the font size. |
| <p>twoside
oneside</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • [twoside] oneside selects two-side or one-side documents. By default, two-side documents have each new chapter and paper starting on odd & right pages. This means that papers with odd number of pages will have an extra blank page at the end: they all start on a right page (easier to find/navigate) but this does not save paper. To change this behavior for papers only, use the onesidepapers option. |
| <p>twosidepapers</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • [twosidepapers] \| onesidepapers forces individual papers to be in two-side or one-side mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – With twosidepapers, a blank page is added to each individual paper with an odd number of pages, so that all the papers start on a right page (with odd number) even though the document is oneside: this helps a lot to quickly browse through the paperback proceedings, while increases the number of total pages (environmental cost). |
| <p>onesidepapers</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Conversely, with onesidepapers, it allows to produce a two-side document (twoside) except for the papers, that are not separated by blank pages when having an odd number of page. |

N.B.1: When this option is not used, its default value will match the one of the whole document (ie. **twosidepapers** is the default if **twoside** is selected; and **onesidepapers** is the default when **oneside** is selected).

N.B.2: before version 0.5, **twosidepapers** was called **cleardoublepage**, and **onesidepapers** was called **clearsinglepage**.

4.2.3 Proceedings-specific formatting

Depending on whether the proceedings are generated in their printed (paperback) or electronic (PDF) document, color links may be disabled⁸, a binding, headers and footers on some specific pages. Also, we may decide to insert the papers in different ways depending on what we work on. All the hyperlink features work properly by default thanks to hyperref, so the only options to set are:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| <p>electronic
printed</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • [electronic] printed: the electronic version has user-defined colors for links (same as default |
|-------------------------------|---|

⁸Color pages are much more expensive to be printed, and the color text readability is reduced when printed in a grey scale.

`colorlinks=true` option of the `pdfpages` package), whereas the printed version have black links (same as using `colorlinks=false` for the `pdfpages` package) so that they do not appear;

`binding` • `binding=XXmm` (default: 0mm, positive value otherwise) may only used for a paperback version⁹. The binding corresponds to the amount of horizontal (x) shift towards the external side of the proceedings (left and right margins then differ for odd and even pages in two-side mode). The binding value may depend on the thickness of the final document, *e.g.* 2mm for a 1cm thickness, 3mm for a 1.5cm thickness, 5mm for a 3cm thickness, etc.

`papers` • `papers=[final] | draft | empty | countpages` changes the way papers are inserted: *this option is very important to set, as it changes the speed of the L^AT_EX run.*

`papers=final` – `papers=final` inserts each PDF page (using `pdfpages`) from 1 to the number of pages indicated by the user, resulting in a slow L^AT_EX run. Use this option for instance when working on the layout and on the bibliography merging process (sec. 5.7).

`papers=draft` – `papers=draft` fakes paper insertion and checks page existence (by `pdfpages`), resulting in a (slightly) faster L^AT_EX run. It replaces each PDF page by an almost blank page after checking that this particular page exists. This is slightly faster than `papers=final` or `papers=countpages`, but not as fast as `papers=empty`. It basically is useful when editing the preamble (cover page, edition information, welcome letters), working on generating the table of contents or the index of authors, or generating proper page numbering *and willing to ensure each inserted page exist.*

`papers=empty` – `papers=empty` fakes paper insertion without checking page existence, resulting in a much faster L^AT_EX run (but not as safe as the previous two). Use it for the same purposes as `papers=draft`. It also is useful for debug purposes, as it indicates on each page its number in the paper, the author list, the paper title, the paper number and the list of bibliography item.

`papers=countpages` – `papers=countpages` inserts the whole paper with `pdfpages`, *i.e.* each page of the paper regardless of the argument `npages=XX` of `\procpaper`.



N.B.: The `papers=countpages` breaks the bibliography management, so the `bib=*` option may look unefficient. Unfortunately, there is no other solution than using `papers=final` if doing a general bibliography.

Important remarks:



New [v0.7]

New [v0.7]

New [v0.7]

1. Since version 0.6, bookmark data are properly generated for all the four options.
2. For all values except `countpages`, if no number of pages is indicated at the paper insertion (using `npages=5`, see sec. 3.3 and 5.2), *only the first page is inserted* by default. Conversely, the number of pages indicated is ignored by the `countpages` option.
3. Switching from `papers=empty` to any of the other three results in broken hyper-links after a single L^AT_EX run. This means that for a working electronic proceedings, 2 compilations are needed with the ‘final’ option (`papers=final` or `papers=countpages`).
4. The option pair `draft | final` is no more passed to `pdfpages`, but rather used as `papers=final|draft`. The option pair `papers=final | draft` is **not** exclusive, so `papers=final` (instead of the last inserted option) ‘win’ if using the two. For instance, using:

```
\documentclass [papers=final,papers=draft] {confproc}
```

we expect the last option (`papers=draft`) to be used. In fact, it is equivalent to:

```
\documentclass [papers=final] {pdfpages}
```

⁹Indeed, when browsing through the PDF, the x -shifts of the binding distracts the reader

So, make sure to only use `papers=draft` if that's what you need!

- headers
 - headers=[allpages] | none | onlypdf | exceptpdf defines the pages to which a header/footer is added. Both header and footer are treated in the same way. On user request, I may later add a second option to manage separately headers and footers.
- headers=allpages
 - [headers=allpages] adds header/footer to all pages. Use it for instance if the paper template has no header nor footer. Advice to conference template designer: this is the simplest solution, as there is no need to renumber all papers. You may then design your templates with headers/footers to see the final result, and discard header/footer before distributing the templates, to save a lot of time at the end!
- headers=no
 - headers=no does not add any header/footer to any pages. This is used when willing to add the header/footer with another software (*e.g.* Acrobat) and other fonts and layout.
- headers=pdfonly
 - headers=pdfonly: headers only added to PDF-included files; for use if one wants to insert header/footer on the inserted papers only. *But why would one do so?*
- headers=exceptpdf
 - headers=exceptpdf: headers added to all pages except PDF-inserted papers.. This is used when the paper template defines a header/footer, that you then have to cope with. Note that this template should definitely have no page number, otherwise you need to edit page numbers on each single paper.
- bib
 - bib=[none] | merge | backref | last: defines how the general bibliography is generated.
- bib=none
 - bib=none when no general bibliography is generated. The three following values for the `bib` option are used for generating a general bibliography.
- bib=merge
 - bib=merge helps when merging bibliographic items. It only inserts the first and last page of each paper. All citations from the current paper then appear either in the header (together with `papers=final | draft`) or onto the page (with `papers=empty`). It also creates back-references from the bibliography to the last page of the papers that use this citation (as for the `bib=backref` option). It runs \LaTeX faster (only 2 pages), but page numbers are incorrect since some pages are missing.
- bib=backref
 - bib=backref generates proper bibliography with back-references. It inserts all the pages from 1 to N as indicated by the user. As for `bib=merge`, all citations from the current paper then appear either in the header (together with `papers=final | draft`) or onto the page (with `papers=empty`). Then, page numbers are ok for the table of contents and the authors' index. This requires several \LaTeX runs, as you can see in the corresponding Unix script in sec. 7.5. A *final* compilation with the `bib=last` option is required.
N.B.: to check the page numbering relatively to the paper, use `papers=final` option to force inserting the PDF instead of a blank page, together with `movepagenumber` in the case papers have page numbers.
- bib=last
 - bib=last inserts the bibliography that is no more added to the paper last page, which means back-references will disappear at the next \LaTeX run. This is why this should be the final run, as far as the bibliography is concerned. This means that the program (paper ordering) is definitively set, the general bibliography is generated (and common items merged), all papers have been re-compiled if necessary (in order to re-number them all, and have them using the new bibliography), and the document has been run through \LaTeX enough times with the `bib=backref` option to have proper page numbering and back-references in the table of contents, the authors' index and the general bibliography (see sec. 6.3 and 7.5).

N.B.: A side effect of the `papers=countpages` is that it breaks the bibliography management: beware that the other current options may look temporarily unefficient.

4.2.4 List of inserted papers

`paperselec=all` | `paperselec=p_001` is used when working on each paper insertion to insert a single paper (paper ‘p_001’ in the example) of all papers. Selecting a single paper allows to check data in particular cases. For instance when the paper length, author list of title has changed, you want to make sure that no change was forgotten when updated them.

4.2.5 Lists layout (table of contents, general bibliography, index)

The next options deal with the layout customization for the table of contents, the index of authors and the general bibliography:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <code>onecoltoc</code>
<code>twocoltoc</code>
New [v0.7] | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>[onecoltoc]</code> <code>twocoltoc</code>: prints the table of contents with one/two column(s).
N.B.: this option pair is boolean, so <code>twocoltoc</code>, <code>twocoltoc=true</code> and <code>onecoltoc=false</code> are equivalent. Also, <code>onecoltoc</code>, <code>onecoltoc=true</code> and <code>twocoltoc=false</code> are equivalent. |
| <code>tocnum</code>

New [v0.7] | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>tocnum=left</code> <code>right</code> places page numbers on the left / right side of table of contents. IMHO the left side provides a faster click access to individual papers.
N.B.: this option was named <code>tocnumleft</code> <code>tocnumright</code> prior to version 0.7. |
| <code>twocolbib</code>
<code>onecolbib</code>
New [v0.7] | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>[twocolbib]</code> <code>onecolbib</code> prints the general bibliography in a two/one column(s) format.
N.B.: this option pair is a boolean, so <code>twocolbib</code>, <code>twocolbib=true</code> and <code>onecolbib=false</code> are equivalent. Also, <code>onecolbib</code>, <code>onecolbib=true</code> and <code>twocolbib=false</code> are equivalent. |
| <code>threecolindex</code>
<code>twocolindex</code> | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>[threecolindex]</code> <code>twocolindex</code> prints the index of authors with three or two columns.
N.B.: this option pair is boolean, so <code>threecolindex</code>, <code>threecolindex=true</code> and <code>twocolindex=false</code> are equivalent. Also, <code>twocolindex</code>, <code>twocolindex=true</code> and <code>threecolindex=false</code> are equivalent. |

4.2.6 Help for checking data and layout

Two new options are helpful to check the validity of individual paper data. They are especially useful when either the title or the author list may have changed at some point during the proceedings edition process. Such changes may happen for the preview proceedings (when generating the proceedings from the first submissions, before the reviewing process), and for the final proceedings (that makes use of the final paper submissions). Indeed, authors often make last minute changes to their paper, and forget to let you know that the title and/or has changed!

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| <code>checktitle</code> | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>checktitle</code> is a boolean defaulted to <code>false</code>. When set to <code>true</code>, it overlays each paper’s title (according to the table of contents data provided by the <code>\procpaper[title={...}]</code> command) onto the first page of each paper (except for the <code>paper=empty</code> since it is useless). |
| <code>checkauthor</code> | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>checkauthor</code> is a boolean defaulted to <code>false</code>. When set to <code>true</code>, it overlays each paper’s author list title (according to the TOC data provided by the <code>\procpaper[author={...}]</code> command) onto the first page of each paper (except for the <code>paper=empty</code> since it is useless), below the title in the case both <code>checktitle</code> and <code>checkauthor</code> are set to <code>true</code>. |

A few more options (and related behaviors) are helpful to design the document layout:

- | | |
|------------------------------|--|
| <code>showpapernumber</code> | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>showpapernumber</code> is a boolean defaulted to <code>false</code> that, when set to <code>showpapernumber=true</code>, adds the paper number below the page number. This is useful when editing the proceedings with <code>papers=final</code> \| <code>countpages</code>, if one notices that a paper has a formatting problem and want to give some feedback to the author (or correct the problem by him/herself). |
| <code>movepagenumber</code> | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <code>movepagenumber</code> is another boolean defaulted to <code>false</code> that moves the page number a few millimeters below its normal position (the result is only seen when combined with <code>headers=allpages</code> \| <code>pdfonly</code>). Two footers then appear: the one from the paper, and below it the one from the proceedings. This allows to check the accuracy of page numbers in the case papers already have a page number in their template (centered in the footer). |

- `showmarginlines` • `showmarginlines` is another boolean defaulted to `false` that overlays the user-defined template format (limited to the upper horizontal line and all vertical lines). Use it when setting the horizontal (`xshift`) and vertical (`yshift`) alignment of each paper. To adjust the margin lines to a given proceedings template, we need to redefine the `\procmarginlines` command, which by default is set to:

```
\renewcommand{\procmarginlines}{
  \noindent
  \vspace*{7mm} % adjusting vertical initial space
  \begin{table}[h!] % table for vertical lines
    \centering
    \color{blue}
    \begin{tabular}{|@{}p{3.3in}@{}|@{}p{0.3in}@{}|@{}p{3.3in}@{}|} % spacing between columns
      \hline % upper horizontal line
      ~~~~~ & ~ & ~~~~~ \\
      \vspace*{7.5in} % less than a page height
      ~~~~~ & ~ & ~~~~~ \\
    \end{tabular}
  \end{table}
}
```

- `colorheaders` • `colorheaders=[black]` allows to change the header/footer color. this is a nice feature for setting the geometry package options in the case where PDF papers already have their headers (`headers=exceptpdf`) and one wants to check if papers are properly aligned: then, temporarily use the `headers=all` option together.

4.2.7 Verbose and pdftk options

The following two options are adding some output text in the log file, for short-term help to the user:

- `debug` • `debug` is a boolean option defaulted to `false` that is passed to the hyperref package.
- `verbose` • `verbose` is a boolean option defaulted to `false` that turns `debug` on and adds confproc-specific messages to the console when inserting the papers:

```
confproc: partial paper insertion (last page=bib items)
----- debug: insert paper -----
confproc/file: p_001.pdf (2 pages)
confproc/title: Templates for One Author
confproc/authors: Alfred Alabama
confproc/index: \p@index{Alabama, Alfred}
confproc/shift: (0.0pt, 0.0pt)
confproc/citations:
confproc/bookmarks:
confproc/switch ID: 45
-----
```

When generating PDF proceeding, you may want to (re)generate individual PDF papers with proper (and homogeneous) PDF metadata. For this purpose, the `pdftk`¹⁰ Unix utility is of big help (see sec. 7.11). To generate `pdftk` data, the `pdftk` option has been added. It is a boolean option defaulted to `false` that generates a `confproc.pdftk` file. When generated, this file contains data for use with `pdftk` via the `papers_info.sh` bash script, and they look like:

New [v0.7]
pdftk

¹⁰Get `pdftk` at: <http://www.accesspdf.com/pdftk/>

```

pdftk A=${PDFFILE} cat A1-3 output ${SPPATH}/p_001.pdf
gs -dBATCH -dNOPAUSE -q -sDEVICE=pdfwrite -dFirstPage=1 -dLastPage=3 -sOUTPUTFILE=${SPPATH}/p_001.pdf
InfoName: p_001.info
InfoKey: Title
InfoValue: Templates for One Author
InfoKey: Author
InfoValue: Alfred Alabama
InfoKey: Subject
InfoValue: DAFx-06 Conference
InfoKey: Producer
InfoValue: pdftk 1.12 + Ghostscript 8.71
InfoKey: Creator
InfoValue: LaTeX2e + confproc 0.7
InfoEnd

```

When `pdftk` is combined with `verbose`, this text also appears in the log window.

<code>pdftkfolder</code>	<code>pdftkfolder = {path/to/pdftk/files/}</code> sets the folder where <code>pdftk</code> files are written string (default: <code>'.'</code> , ie. the current folder).
<code>pdftksubject</code>	<code>pdftksubject = {DAFx-06 Conference}</code> sets the subject string (default: <code>Conference</code>).
<code>pdftkproducer</code>	<code>pdftkproducer = {producer}</code> sets the producer string (default: <code>'pdftk 1.12+ Ghostscript 8.71'</code>).
<code>pdftkcreator</code>	<code>pdftkcreator = {creator}</code> sets the creator string (default: <code>LaTeX2e + 'confproc 0.7'</code>).

4.2.8 Options for the `hyperref` package

The `confproc` package being based on the `hyperref` package for all PDF and links, all the `hyperref` option values can be customized. This is a good thing for fine tuning your document, but at your own risks if you do not read the corresponding documentation [10]. To help the reader, next paragraphs indicate which options should be customized (sandbox), and the following paragraph the options that should not be modified (expert side).

New [v0.7]	Mechanism to set options Up to version 0.5, unknown options used with the <code>confproc</code> package were passed to the <code>hyperref</code> package. While this is still possible, we strongly recommend to pass options to <code>hyperref</code> using the <code>hyperref={option list}</code> , since only this mechanism will be allowed in future versions. For instance, default values are:
---	---

```

hyperref={colorlinks=true,linkcolor=red,citecolor=blue,urlcolor=blue,%
          bookmarksopen=true,bookmarksopenlevel=1}%

```

The sandbox Some of `hyperref` options should be customized to each one's needs, for instance:

<code>colorlinks</code>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>colorlinks=true</code> or <code>colorlinks</code> provides color links in the table of contents, index of authors and general bibliography to the corresponding pages in the proceedings. This option has the same effect as the <code>electronic</code> option from the <code>confproc</code> package. • <code>colorlinks=false</code> provides links without color, which is particularly helpful for printed proceedings (where using color increases the cost of printing, or reduces the quality if printed in black and white). This option has the same effect as the <code>printed</code> option from the <code>confproc</code> package.
<code>citecolor</code>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>citecolor=colorforcite</code> uses the color <code>colorforcite</code> (to be defined by the used) for links to bibliography items cited;
<code>linkcolor</code>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>linkcolor=colorforlink</code> uses the color <code>colorforlink</code> for links, such as from the index of authors, table of contents and general bibliography back-references;

- `urlcolor`
 - `urlcolor=colorforurl` uses the color `colorforurl` for URL, mainly in the general bibliography but also in the publishing information, for example;
- `debug`
 - `debug` prints more information from the `hyperref` package;
- `a4paper, letterpaper`
 - `a4paper` | `letterpaper` are passed to `hyperref`;
- `bookmarksopen`
 - `bookmarksopen=[true] | false`: opens/closes the bookmarks of the PDF file.
N.B.: a change of this option will only be reflected in the PDF after two `pdfLATEX` runs.
-  `bookmarksopenlevel`
 - `bookmarksopenlevel=0 | [1] | 2`: bookmarks are opened at level 0 (parts=days), 1 (chapters=sessions) or 2 (sections=papers). The ‘session’ level is a good choice, as they are not too many sessions, so all lines should display at once when opening the PDF, whereas the ‘paper’ level would require more lines than papers (100? 200?).
N.B.: a change of this option will only be reflected in the PDF after two `pdfLATEX` runs.

The expert side Other `hyperref` options change hyperlink properties such as back-references. Their values are then given by default to the `hyperref` package to ensure the electronic version of the proceedings is ok. They should be changed with a lot of care¹¹:

- `pdftex`
 - `pdftex`: to set up `hyperref` for use with the `pdftex` program.
- `raiselinks`
 - `raiselinks`: in the `hypertex` driver, the height of links is normally calculated by the driver as simply the base line of contained text; this options forces `\special` commands to reflect the real height of the link (which could contain a graphic).
- `hyperindex`
 - `hyperindex`: makes the text of index entries into hyperlinks. It is used for the index of authors, to link back to their various papers.
- `backref`
 - `backref`: allows for back-references in the general bibliography.
- `pagebackref`
 - `pagebackref`: adds ‘backlink’ text to the end of each item in the bibliography, as a list of page numbers (this can only work properly if there is a blank line after each `\bibitem`).
- `plainpages`
 - `plainpages=false`: forces page anchors to be named by the arabic form of page number, rather than the formatted form. This is useful since `confproc` uses the `book` class, and uses a front matter (publishing information, welcome letters, table of contents, etc) before inserting papers.
- `pdfpagelabels`
 - `pdfpagelabels`: sets PDF page labels, to be able to link to them.
- `breaklinks`
 - `breaklinks`: allows links to break over lines by making links over multiple lines into PDF links to the same target. This is particularly useful for 2-columns table of contents with the option `linktocpage=false` (not the default); and for long URLs in the general bibliography.
- `linktocpage`
 - `linktocpage`: makes page number (instead of text) to be the link to table of contents (as well as list of figures and list of tables, but they are not often used for proceedings).
- `pdfstartview=XYZ`
 - `pdfstartview=XYZ`: opens the PDF in Acrobat with `zoom=100%` instead of full screen; especially useful if working with a big screen (*e.g.* 30 inches).

4.2.9 Passed to geometry

`geometry` As for `hyperref`, an option passed options to the `geometry` package: `geometry={option list}`. This simplifies a lot the setting of the proceedings layout variables, that previously was poorly

New [v0.7]

¹¹Please refer to the `hyperref` documentation [10] for more complete, accurate and up-to-date descriptions.

managed (part of it was hard-coded in the `confproc.cls` file, and the left-over neglected and left to the user's skills). Default values are:

```
geometry={text={6.9in,9in},inner=0.8in,top=1in,bottom=1in,%  
headsep=7.05mm,footskip=10mm,voffset=-5mm}
```

4.2.10 Default option values

By default, the set of options used (if not defined by the user) produces a 2-side 10pt and letter size final electronic proceedings (ie. no debug) without binding and with blue links:

- document formatting, also passed to book: `letterpaper, 10pt, twoside`;
- proceedings-specific formatting: `twosidepapers, electronic, binding=0mm, papers=final, headers=allpages, bib=none`;
- list of inserted papers: `paperselec=all`;
- lists formatting: `onecoltoc, tocnum=left, threecolindex, twocolbib`;
- checking layout and paper data: `checktitle=false, checkauthor=false, showmarginlines=false, showpapernumber=false, movepagenumber=false, colorheaders=black`;
- printing package debug: `verbose=false, debug=false`;
- generating the pdftk data file: `pdftk=false`;
- passed to hyperref: `colorlinks=true, linkcolor=red, citecolor=blue, urlcolor=blue, bookmarksopen=true, bookmarksopenlevel=1`;
- passed to geometry: `text=6.9in,9in, inner=0.8in, top=1in, bottom=1in, headsep=7.05mm, footskip=10mm, voffset=-5mm`.

4.2.11 Back to the example: loading the class with options

```
85 \example2custom  
86 \documentclass[letterpaper,10pt,twoside,%  
87  electronic,% [printed] | electronic  
88  papers=final,% empty | draft | [final] | countpages  
89  headers=exceptpdf,% none | pdfonly | exceptpdf | [allpages]  
90  paperselec=all, %[all] | p_001 | p_fake  
91  colorheaders=red,%  
92  verbose,%  
93  pdftk,%  
94  pdftkfolder={pdftk_info/},%  
95  pdftksubject={DAFx-06 Conference},%  
96  hyperref={bookmarksdepth=1,bookmarksopen,bookmarksopenlevel=0,%  
97    citecolor=colorforcite,linkcolor=colorforlink,urlcolor=colorforurl},%
```

4.2.12 Document layout

We used the following geometry options for tuning page attributes:

```
98  geometry={text={175truemm,226truemm},% A4 & letter  
99    inner=0.805in,top=29.15mm,bottom=24.5mm,footskip=9.68mm,voffset=-5mm},%letter  
100 ]{confproc}  
101
```

so that the proceedings layout can perfectly match the one of individual papers. This means that you have to check for those values in your template.

Option / category	Package(s)	Function
Document formatting		
[letterpaper] | a4paper	hyperref, confproc	European A4 | North American paper format
[10pt] | 11pt | 12pt	book, confproc	set normal font size
[twoside] | oneside	book, confproc	for two/one-side documents (2-side: new chapters start on odd & right pages)
[twosidepapers] | onsidepapers	confproc	for papers to be locally considered as two/one-side documents
Proceedings-specific formatting		
[electronic] | printed	confproc	links with/without colors. Identical to <code>colorlinks=true</code> | <code>false</code> from <code>pdfpages</code>
binding=Xmm [0mm]	confproc	amount of horizontal space added to printed version (independent from <code>printed</code>)
papers=[final] draft	confproc pdfpages, confproc	inserts PDF papers from page 1 to N (slow) fakes PDF papers inclusion from page 1 to N, but checks page existence (faster)
empty	confproc	fakes PDF papers inclusion from page 1 to N without checking page existence (fastest)
countpages	confproc	include full PDF papers (slowest; ignore N and breaks bibliography)
headers=[allpages] pdfonly exceptpdf none	confproc confproc confproc confproc	header/footer for all pages header/footer only for PDF papers header/footer for all pages except PDF papers no header/footer for any pages
bib=[none] last	confproc confproc	no general bibliography for the final compilation with general bibliography (breaks back-references)
merge	confproc	only includes 1st and last page (faster run) for merging bib items in the general bibliography
backref	confproc	prepares back-references before final run
List of inserted papers		
paperselec=[all] | p_001...	confproc	indicate the papers to be inserted (1 or all)
Lists formatting		
[onecoltoc] | twocoltoc	confproc	one/two column(s) table of contents
tocnum=[left] | right	confproc	left/right page numbering table of contents
[onecolbib] | twocolbib	confproc	one/two column(s) general bibliography
[threecolindex] | twocolindex	confproc	three/two columns index of authors
Help for checking data and layout		
checktitle ([false])	confproc	overlays the title onto each paper's 1st page
checkauthor ([false])	confproc	overlays the author list onto each paper's 1st page
showpapernumber ([false])	confproc	adds paper number below page number
movepagenumber ([false])	confproc	moves page number down by a few millimeters
showmarginlines ([false])	confproc	shows margin lines of paper template
colorheaders=[black]	confproc	changes color of header/footer

Table 1: *List of options 1/2*

Option / category	Package(s)	Function
Verbose and pdftk options		
<code>debug</code> ([false])	hyperref	sets <code>debug=true</code> for hyperref
<code>verbose</code> ([false])	confproc	sets <code>debug=true</code> + adds confproc specific debug
<code>pdftk</code> ([false])	confproc	generates confproc.pdftk with pdftk commands for metadata of individual papers
<code>pdftksubject</code> ([Conference])	confproc	set PDF subject metadata for pdftk
<code>pdftkproducer</code> ([pdftk 1.12 + Ghostscript 8.71])	confproc	set PDF producer metadata for pdftk
<code>pdftkcreator</code> ([LaTeX2e + confproc 0.7])	confproc	set PDF creator metadata for pdftk
Passed to hyperref using <code>hyperref={option list}</code>		
<code>backref</code>	hyperref	add reference page number and link to each bibliographic item
<code>breaklinks</code>	hyperref	allows links to break over lines by making links over multiple lines into PDF links to the same target (great for table of contents and bibliography in two columns)
<code>citecolor=[blue]</code>	hyperref	use the user-defined <code>colorforcite</code> color for links to bibliography items cited
<code>colorlinks=[true] | false</code>	hyperref	links without/without colors. Equivalent to <code>electronic | printed</code>
<code>hyperindex</code>	hyperref	author index entries pages = hyperlinks to each paper
<code>linkcolor=[red]</code>	hyperref	color to use for links (from index, TOC, and bibliography back-references)
<code>linktocpage=[true]</code> <code>pdfpagelabels=[true]</code>	hyperref hyperref	TOC link is the page number, not the text set PDF page labels: compulsory for creating any link to page!
<code>pdfstartview=[XYZ]</code>	hyperref	open the PDF file in Acrobat with <code>zoom=100%</code> instead of full screen
<code>pdftex=[true]</code> <code>plainpages=[false]</code>	hyperref hyperref	set up hyperref for use with pdfTeX forces page anchors to be named by the arabic form of the page number, rather than the formatted form
<code>raiselinks=[true]</code>	hyperref	forces <code>\special</code> commands to reflect the link real height (may contain a graphic)
<code>urlcolor=blue</code>	hyperref	use the <code>blue</code> color for URL (general bibliography, publishing information)
Passed to geometry using <code>geometry={option list}</code>		
<code>text={height=21cm,width=15cm}</code>	geometry	see geometry

Table 2: Alphabetical list of all options 2/2

4.2.13 Example: loading extra packages

Then, we define the other packages to be used.



Important note: any package that redefines L^AT_EX macros should be inserted before `hyperref`. At present, `confproc` does not provide any mechanism for this, so adding other such packages may result in surprises. A temporarily solution is to add them in the class definition itself...

We specify the input and font encodings, to allow for running L^AT_EX on a document with accents (in the list of authors and paper titles):

```
102 \usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
103 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
```

We change the default L^AT_EX font to ‘Times’, as it displays better in PDF files:

```
104 \usepackage{mathptmx}
```

N.B.: the `mathptmx` package better behaves than `times`: it doesn’t change the maths font, and does not load Helvetica and Courier at horrible sizes (they look even worse than the default sans and mono fonts in combination)¹².

The header of DAFx-06 proceedings had a ‘9th’, that requires:

```
105 \usepackage[super]{nth}
106
```

4.3 Commands and customization

Here is a list of what proceedings element that can be customized: the document layout (see sec. 4.2.12); the PDF metadata (see sec. 4.3.3); the titles for special section (see sec. 4.3.6); the front page (see sec. 4.3.5); the document header/footer (see sec. 4.3.4); the publishing information; the welcome letter(s); the title/author style in the table of contents and bookmarks (see sec. 5.1.13); the color for links (see sec. 4.3.2); and of course how many columns for the table of contents (1 or 2), bibliography (1 or 2) and index of authors (2 or 3) using options.



N.B.: All these customizations are also used in the provided example file `example3optim.tex`; the explanations in section 5 are then similar (for people skipping one of the two).

4.3.1 PDF vertical and horizontal shifts

We set the default x (left/right) and y (up/down) shifts used to insert PDFs files:

```
107 \setlength{\LaTeXxShift}{0pt}
108 \setlength{\LaTeXyShift}{-3mm} %letter
109 %\setlength{\LaTeXyShift}{1mm} %A4
110 \setlength{\WordxShift}{10pt}
111 \setlength{\WordyShift}{-40pt}
112
```

The commented line is used with the A4 format (see also sec. 4.2.12). The values may differ depending if the papers were generated using a L^AT_EX template and a Word template, in the case your templates are not perfectly identical (which is often the case). The default values provided by the class are those used for the DAFx-06 proceedings, and were tested for both letter and A4 format.



Those global values are used by default for each paper, except if `\procpaper` has other values specified for the option arguments: `xshift=...` and `yshift=...`

4.3.2 Define colors for internal and external hyper-links

When inserting the document class, we have used home-made colors for the links (`citecolor`, `linkcolor` and `urlcolor`); those colors remain to be defined in the document preamble before being used:

¹²Thanks to Will Robertson for this information.

```

113 \definecolor{colorforlink}{rgb}{0,0,0.8}
114 \definecolor{colorforcite}{rgb}{0,0.8,0}
115 \definecolor{colorforurl}{rgb}{0,0,1}
116

```

There are a few things you need to know about it:

- the way colors are declared is explained in the `color` package;
- the `colorforlink` color is used for all links in the table of contents and index of authors, as well as back-references;
- the `colorforurl` color is useful only if you include URL(s) in you preamble, or in the general bibliography (if any);
- the `colorforcite` color is useful only in two cases:
 - without a general bibliography: if you cite any document form the preamble (not from a paper);
 - with a general bibliography: it is only used during the merging process. After this process and when generating the final document, all citations will disappear, as the last page of the paper is properly inserted.

4.3.3 PDF metadata

As `confproc` is to be used with `pdfLATEX` and generates a PDF, it makes sense to customize the PDF metadata, that correspond to the PDF file information that are provided from the operating system. At least three metadata should be set, given here with their default values. To do so, we start by defining generic strings that will be used:

```

\DAFxname      • firstly, the conference name
117 \newcommand{\DAFxname}{Proc.~of the \nth{9} %
118   Int.~Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx-06)}

\DAFxdate      • secondly, the conference date(s):
119 \newcommand{\DAFxdate}{September 18-20, 2006}

\DAFxaddress   • thirdly, the conference address:
120 \newcommand{\DAFxaddress}{Montreal, Canada}
121

```

We can then define the 3 PDF metadata as follows:

```

\procpdfauthor • use \procpdfauthor to change the PDF author (default: '[Proceedings author/editor]'):
122 \renewcommand{\procpdfauthor}{Vincent Verfaille, McGill University}

\procpdftitle  • use \procpdftitle to change the PDF short title (default: '[Proceedings title]'):
123 \renewcommand{\procpdftitle}{DAFx-06 Proceedings - \DAFxaddress}

\procpdfsubject • use \procpdfsubject to change the PDF subject (default: '[Proceedings description]'):
124 \renewcommand{\procpdfsubject}{Conference proceedings}
125

```

`\hypersetup` Those values are used to set the `\hypersetup` command. They are only evaluated when the document begins, and can also be replaced by redefining `\hypersetup` in the document preamble.

 N.B.: depending on the PDF viewer, only the first 30 or so characters of those metadata may be displayed (eg. Apple's Preview, Adobe Reader). It is then advised to use the shortest possible texts.

`\hypersetup` N.B.: an alternative way to change the PDF metadata consist in using the `\hypersetup` command (see the `hyperref` package).

4.3.4 Header and footer

The paper templates often have a header and footer, so we may want to use the same headers/footers for the whole proceedings (using the `headers` option). This is costumized by redefining the left

```
\proclhead \procchead
126 \renewcommand{\proclhead}{}%
127 %\renewcommand{\proclhead}{\em \small \procpdfsubject}
128 \renewcommand{\proclhead}{\em \small \DAFxname, \DAFxaddress, \DAFxdate}}
```

`\proccfoot` as well as `\proccfoot` for the central footers (the page number being centered by default):

```
129 \renewcommand{\proccfoot}{\small DAFX-\thepage}
```

`\procfootvskip` The `\procfootvskip` length adjusts the footer vertical position:

```
130 \setlength{\procfootvskip}{1.2mm}
```

`\procoptfootvskip` When checking the page numbering for papers which template already includes the page number, we may change the amount of vertical shift applied to move down by a few millimeters (default: 3mm) the footer when using the `movepagenumber` option. Then, use the `\procoptfootvskip` command:

```
131 %\setlength{\procoptfootvskip}{4mm}
132
```

As soon as you remove the `movepagenumber` option, the footer comes back to its normal position.

4.3.5 Define front page and title commands

L^AT_EX commands To generate the front page with `\maketitle`, redefine usual **L^AT_EX** commands:

```
\author • the proceedings' author/editor:
133 %\author{Vincent Verfaillle, McGill University}

\title • the proceedings' title:
134 %\title{Proc. of the \nth{9} Int. Conf. on Digital Audio Effects\}
135 % Montreal, Quebec, Canada}

\date • the proceedings' date:
136 %\date{Sept. ~18--20, 2006}
```

We can alternatively use the `\procpdfauthor` and `\procpdftitle` commands that we previously defined (if set to what is expected) to set:

```
\author • the proceedings' author/editor:
137 \author{\procpdfauthor}

\title • the proceedings' title:
138 %\title{\procpdftitle}
139 \title{\DAFxname\ \DAFxaddress}
```

`\date` • the proceedings' date:

```
140 %%\date{\today}
```

```
141 \date{\DAFxdate}
```

Then, some fine tuning of all the parameters of this page is needed so that it looks as you wish (potentially with logos, images, etc).

Import a PDF page from another editor As for the DAFx-06 proceedings, we may insert with `pdfpages` the cover, generated as another document (for instance with Xe_{La}TeX):

```
142 %%\includepdf[noautoscale,pages=1,link]{\PICTPATH ex_1stpage.pdf}
```

```
143
```

Indeed, we found it easier to design our very own cover using Xe_{La}TeX, or any other tool.

N.B.: the PDF file named `ex_1stpage.pdf` is provided in the `.zip` archive of the package but not generated by the package.

4.3.6 Special section titles (toc, index, biblio)

To change special section titles, redefine the \LaTeX commands already modified by `confproc`:

`\contentsname` • title of the table of contents (default: 'Conference Program'):

```
144 %%\renewcommand{\contentsname}{List of Sessions}
```

`\bibname` • title of the general bibliography (default: 'Full Bibliography'):

```
145 %%\renewcommand{\bibname}{General Bibliography}
```

`\indexname` • title of the index (default: 'Index of Authors'):

```
146 %%\renewcommand{\indexname}{List of Authors}
```

4.3.7 Declare paths to pictures, papers, texts...

`\PAPERPATH` We then define paths to papers (with both PDF papers and related folders to batch re-generate them all) that the `example2custom.tex` file uses, *i.e.*:

```
147 \renewcommand{\PAPERPATH}{papers/}
```

4.3.8 Chapter and section styles

Chapter and section styles can also be modified (for instance with the `titlesec` package) to adapt them to your needs. Remember that days appear as parts in the TOC and bookmarks, sessions as chapters, and papers as sections.

4.3.9 Title/author layout

`\texorpdfstring` The `\texorpdfstring` command allows for a different text in LaTeX and for the PDF (which is good for having different bookmark titles and table of contents entries). It is then used by default to add a line break between the paper title and the authors' names in the table of contents. You can customize the title font style using the `\papertitlestyle` command as in:

```
\papertitlestyle 148 %%\renewcommand{\papertitlestyle}{\texorpdfstring{}{\scshape}}
```

`\paperauthorstyle` that defines the paper's title in small capitals. The `\paperauthorstyle` command is used to customize the author font style. For instance, to replace the line break (between paper title and list of authors, in the table of contents) by a comma in the table of contents only (not in the PDF bookmark):

```
149 %%\renewcommand{\paperauthorstyle}{\texorpdfstring{, }{\break}}
```

In case we want to check each title and author list, that can be useful to specify how the overlaid text is formatted.

```
\confstylechecktitle To do so, we first define the format of the check title:  
150 \renewcommand{\confstylechecktitle}{\vspace*{0.3cm} %  
151 \bf \sc \Large \noindent \centerline}
```

```
\confstylecheckauthor and then the format of the check author list:  
152 \renewcommand{\confstylecheckauthor}{\large \it \noindent \centerline}
```

4.3.10 Make the index

The last step of the preamble is to make the index:

```
153 \makeindex  
154
```

4.4 Front matter: cover page, index and table of contents

We can now start the document and its front matter by using:

```
155 %%===== PROCEEDINGS =====  
156 \begin{document}  
157  
158 \frontmatter
```

New [v0.7]

Since version 0.5, switching to the front matter does not anymore automatically changes the style of table of contents entries.

```
\frontmattertocstyle We then explicitly use the optional style:  
159 \frontmattertocstyle
```

We then force the cover (ie. the first page of the proceedings) to be numbered '1':

```
160 \setcounter{page}{1}
```

4.4.1 Cover page

We now add a bookmark chapter in the front matter:

```
161 \pdfbookmark[0]{Preamble}{preamble}
```

That way, we ensure that all the sections in the front matter/preamble (cover page, welcome letters, etc) except the table of contents appear in a same bookmark as sub-items, thus reducing the number of lines appearing that do not deal with days, sessions, papers, etc. Note that we do it by hand. This is not as beautiful and general as if the class was doing it for you (which could have been done); however, not automatizing this bookmark entry allows the proceedings editor to decide if he wishes to link to the first pages or not.

We then include the first page and generate its bookmark entry:

```
162 \pdfbookmark[1]{Cover}{cover}
```

and produce the first page:

```
163 \maketitle  
164 \newpage  
165
```

4.4.2 Table of contents

To ensure next page is numbered and has proper headers/footers, use:

```
166 \otherpagestyle
```

We now insert the conference program (table of contents):

```
167 \tableofcontents
168
```

N.B.: the bookmark entries are automatically generated from the table of contents.

4.5 Main matter: the papers

We can then begin inserting the papers.

```
169 %%==== BEGINNING OF PAPERS ====
```

Before doing so however, we use the following line to set a counter that is used by the `pdftk` option to properly count page numbers taking into account the preamble.

```
170 \setcounter{npagespreamble}{\arabic{page}-1} % only useful for the 'pdftk' option
```



Why do we need to do so? Since page numbers change from roman to arabic, page numbers in the document do restart at 1, whereas for the PDF document (when opened into a viewer), page numbers are different and go on increasing! Therefore, the export of individual papers with `pdftk`¹³ could not work without this trick, that I still did not figure out how to hide it from the user.

`\mainmatter` We now (and only after last line) switch to the main matter and to arabic page numbering:

```
171 \mainmatter
```

New [v0.7]

Since version 0.5, switching to the main matter does not anymore automatically changes the style of table of contents entries.

`\mainmattertocstyle` We then explicitly use the optional style:

```
172 \mainmattertocstyle
```

We then insert the papers, day-by-day and session-by-session.

`\procdays` Remember that from the bookmark structure point of view, a day appears as a part:



```
173 \procdays{Day 1}
174 %   \color{black}
175 %   \begin{macro}{\session}
176 %     a session appears as a chapter:
177 %   \end{macro}
178 %   \color{black!50}
179 %   \begin{macrocode}
180 \session{Oral Session 1}
```

`\procpaper` and a paper appears as a section:

```
181 \procpaper[xshift=\LaTeXxShift{}, yshift=\LaTeXyShift{}, switch=45, npages=6,%
182   title={Templates for One Author},%
183   author={Alfred Alabama},%
184   index={\index{Alabama, Alfred}},%
185 ]{p_001}

186 \procpaper[xshift=\LaTeXxShift{}, yshift=\LaTeXyShift{}, switch=21, npages=5,%
```

¹³Get `pdftk` at: <http://www.accesspdf.com/pdftk/>

```

187 title={Templates for One Author with Two Affiliations},%
188 author={Bob Boogie-Woogie},%
189 index={\index{Boogie-Woogie, Bob}},%
190 ]{p_003}
191

```

We also give an example of how the older interface to load paper can still be used:

```

192 %\procinsertpaper{\LaTeXxShift{} \LaTeXyShift}{5}{p_003}%
193 %   {Templates for One Author with Two Affiliations}% paper title
194 %   {Bob Boogie-Woogie}% list of authors
195 %   {\index{Boogie-Woogie, Bob}}% authors index entries
196 %   {Serra:1996:sms,Moorer:2000:AES:audio:millenium,%
197 %     Arfib:1998:DAFx,Haykin:1991:adaptive:filter}%
198 %   {21}{\pdfbookmark[2]{Bob Boogie-Woogie}{21.author1}}

199 \session{Poster Session 1}

200 \procpaper[xshift=\LaTeXxShift{}, yshift=\LaTeXyShift{}, switch=33, npages=4,%

201   title = {Templates for Two Authors},%
202   author={Alfred Alabama, Chris Christmas},%
203   index={\index{Alabama, Alfred}\index{Christmas, Chris}},%
204 ]{p_005}
205
206 \procdays{Day 2}
207 \session{Oral Session 2}

208 \procpaper[xshift=\LaTeXxShift{}, yshift=\LaTeXyShift{}, switch=75, npages=6,%

209   title={Templates for Three Authors},%
210   author={Bob Boogie-Woogie, Chris Christmas, Don Didon},%
211   index={\index{Boogie-Woogie, Bob}\index{Christmas, Chris}%
212     \index{Didon, Don}},%
213 ]{p_007}

214 \procpaper[xshift=\LaTeXxShift{}, yshift=\LaTeXyShift{}, switch=27, npages=7,%

215   title={Templates f\'or F\'o"ur ÃAuthors},%
216   author={J\o{}hn J\'oe, K\'e\~{n}t K\~{i}ng, L\'ou L\'ou,%
217     M\'anfr\'ed J. M\^ost\ue{k}i},
218   index={\index{J\'oe, J\o{}hn}\index{K\~{i}ng, K\'e\~{n}t}%
219     \index{L\'ou, L\'ou}\index{M\^ost\ue{k}i, M\'anfr\'ed J.}},
220 ]{p_009}
221
222 %%==== END OF PAPERS ====

```

4.6 Back matter: index of authors

`\backmatter` After all papers are inserted, we switch to the document back matter (bibliography & index):

```
223 \backmatter
```

Once again, we use the optional style for table of contents entries:

```
224 \backmattertocstyle
```

that we may have redefined it in the preamble (it uses the `titletoc` package).

`\insertindex` We finally insert the index:

```
225 \insertindex
226 \end{document}

227 </example2custom>
```

4.7 L^AT_EX runs

To build this example, run the following L^AT_EX steps:

1. generates the first `.aux` and `.idx` files (use option `papers=empty` to go faster, as this time the number of pages for each paper has been defined):
`pdflatex example2custom.tex`
2. generates the author index:
`makeindex -s confproc2.ist example2custom.idx`
3. inserts table of contents and index, and update their page numbers for next run (use option `papers=final` to ensure internal links are correct):
`pdflatex example2custom.tex`
4. final L^AT_EX run inserting table of contents and index with proper page numbers; useful only if the table of contents is longer than a single page (`papers=final`):
`pdflatex example2custom.tex`

Next section provide another working example (`example3optim.tex`) with several tricks to help optimizing the proceedings building process, and that was tested by re-generating the DAFx-06 proceedings (several years after the conference). The resulting PDFs were identical (apart from the improvements for bookmarks managements), but the work line is much easier to use and read. To generate the example proceedings, run `confproc.ins` through L^AT_EX. Better, run the bash script called `buildproc` (see sec. 7.5): it will run all the steps for you.

5 Example 3 (example3optim.tex & others)

Full working example

Incremental learning... Compared to the previous customization example in sec. 4, this third example illustrates a complete and working example with: the use of some more tools: various package option sets depending on the compilation step, the publishing informations, a welcome letter, a paper switch to simplify the paper insertion and program changes, and a general bibliography. Moreover, the conference program is directly generated from a .csv file by the `generateswitch.pl` Perl script. Tools to ensure that all pages of each PDF are inserted without having to run \LaTeX on the whole document (quite slow) are provided.

5.1 example3optim.tex: Main file

The main file is named `example3optim.tex`. Once again, lines of code that do not differ from previous example (ie. `example2custom.tex`) appear in grey color.

```
228 \example3optim)
```

5.1.1 Using the `confproc` class

The class is to be called as would have been the `book.cls`. For this example, the exhaustive list of option values is given (as well as a comment with possible values and default values between squared brackets):

```
229 \documentclass[letterpaper,% [letterpaper] | a4paper
230 10pt,% [10pt] | 11pt | 12pt
231 twoside,% [twoside] | oneside
232 twosidepapers,% [twosidepapers] | onesidepapers
233 electronic,% [electronic] | printed
234 binding=0mm,% [0mm]
235 papers=final,% empty | draft | [final]
236 headers=exceptpdf,% none | pdfonly | exceptpdf | [allpages]
237 bib=backref,% [none] | merge | backref | final
238 paperselec=all,% [all] | p_001 | paper_2 | 3 ...
239 onecoltoc,% [onecoltoc] | twocoltoc
240 tocnun=left,% [left] | right
241 twocolbib,% [twocolbib] | onecolbib
242 threecolindex,% [threecolindex] | twocolindex
243 checktitle=false,% true | [false]
244 checkauthor=false,% true | [false]
245 showpapernumber=false,% true | [false]
246 movepagenumber=false,% true | [false]
247 showmarginlines=false,% true | [false]
248 colorheaders=black,% [black] | red | any color!
249 debug=false,% true | [false]
250 verbose=false,% true | [false]
251 pdftk=true,% true | [false]
252 hyperref={bookmarksdepth=1,bookmarksopen,bookmarksopenlevel=0,%
253 linkcolor=colorforlink,urlcolor=colorforurl}, % [blue, blue, blue]
254 geometry={text={175truemm,226truemm},% A4 & letter
255 inner=0.805in,top=29.15mm,bottom=24.5mm,footskip=9.68mm,voffset=-5mm},%letter
256 ]{confproc}
257 %% inner=0.69in,top=33.9mm,bottom=38mm,footskip=10.4mm,voffset=-4.8mm},%A4
```

To simplify the proceedings building, we can use the bash scripts in sec. 6.1 to insert a file containing this command with the list of options:

```
258 %\input{exclass}
```

Inserting options that way allows to switch between class options for various L^AT_EX runs by using 2 files (`exclasspre.tex` and `exclasslast.tex`). In those two files, the class is defined with different options set, and each one is temporarily renamed as `exclass.tex` before being inserted.

5.1.2 Loading extra packages

We define the other packages to be used.



Important note: any package that redefines L^AT_EX macros should be inserted before `hyperref`. At present, `confproc` does not provide any mechanism for this, so adding other such packages may result in surprises. A temporarily solution is to add them in the class definition itself..

We use `setspace` to change the line spacing in the welcome letter (which text is not as dense as the papers themselves):

```
259 \usepackage{setspace}
```

The `xkeyval` package ensures further compatibility with other packages using it:

```
260 \usepackage{xkeyval}
```

[BIB]

We then use a bibliography style for the general bibliography:

```
261 \usepackage{newapave}
```

We then specify the input and font encodings, to allow for running L^AT_EX on a document with accents (in the list of authors and paper titles):

```
262 \usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
```

```
263 \usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
```

We change the default L^AT_EX font to ‘Times’, as it displays better in PDF files:

```
264 \usepackage{mathptmx}
```

The header of DAFx-06 proceedings had a ‘9th’, that requires:

```
265 \usepackage[super]{nth}
```

```
266
```

5.1.3 Fine tuning the document layout

To refine the document layout, we may use the `layout` package:

```
267 %\usepackage{layout}
```

as well as `layouts` to refine the table of contents layout:

```
268 %\usepackage{layouts}
```



N.B.: When the table of contents layout is inserted too early, it is not properly displayed!

5.1.4 PDF vertical and horizontal shifts

We set the default x (left/right) and y (up/down) shifts used to insert PDFs files:

```
269 \setlength{\LaTeXxShift}{0pt}
```

```
270 \setlength{\LaTeXyShift}{-3mm} %letter
```

```
271 %\setlength{\LaTeXyShift}{1mm} %A4
```

```
272 \setlength{\WordxShift}{10pt}
```

```
273 \setlength{\WordyShift}{-40pt}
```

```
274
```



Those global values are used by default for each paper, except if `\procpaper` has other values specified for the option arguments: `xshift=...` and `yshift=...`

5.1.5 Define colors for internal and external hyper-links

When inserting the document class, we have used home-made colors for the links (`citecolor`, `linkcolor` and `urlcolor`); those colors remain to be defined in the document preamble before being used:

```
275 \definecolor{colorforlink}{rgb}{0,0,0.8}
276 \definecolor{colorforcite}{rgb}{0,0.8,0}
277 \definecolor{colorforurl}{rgb}{0,0,1}
278
```

See section 4.3.2 for complementary information.

5.1.6 Customize PDF metadata

At least three PDF metadata should be set, given here with their default values. To do so, we start by defining generic strings that will be used:

`\DAFxname` • firstly, the conference name

```
279 \newcommand{\DAFxname}{Proc.~of the \nth{9} %
280 Int.~Conference on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx-06)}
```

`\DAFxdate` • secondly, the conference date(s):

```
281 \newcommand{\DAFxdate}{September 18-20, 2006}
```

`\DAFxaddress` • thirdly, the conference address:

```
282 \newcommand{\DAFxaddress}{Montreal, Canada}
283
```

We can then define the 3 PDF metadata as follows:

`\procpdfauthor` • use `\procpdfauthor` to change the PDF author (default: ‘[Proceedings author/editor]’):

```
284 \renewcommand{\procpdfauthor}{Vincent Verfaille, McGill University}
```

`\procpdftitle` • use `\procpdftitle` to change the PDF short title (default: ‘[Proceedings title]’):

```
285 \renewcommand{\procpdftitle}{DAFx-06 Proceedings - \DAFxaddress}
```

`\procpdfsubject` • use `\procpdfsubject` to change the PDF subject (default: ‘[Proceedings description]’):

```
286 \renewcommand{\procpdfsubject}{Conference proceedings}
287
```

`\hypersetup` Those values are used to set the `\hypersetup` command. They are only evaluated when the document begins, and can also be replaced by redefining `\hypersetup` in the document preamble.



`\hypersetup` N.B.: depending on the PDF viewer, only the first 30 or so characters of those metadata may be displayed (eg. Apple’s Preview, Adobe Reader). It is then advised to use the shortest possible texts.
N.B.: an alternative way to change the PDF metadata consist in using the `\hypersetup` command (see the `hyperref` package).

5.1.7 Header and footer

The paper templates often have a header and footer, so we may want to use the same headers/footers for the whole proceedings (using the `headers` option). This is customized by redefining the left `\proclhead` and centre `\procchead` header commands:

```
\proclhead \procchead 288 \renewcommand{\procchead}{} %
289 \renewcommand{\proclhead}{{\em \small \DAFxname, \DAFxaddress, \DAFxdate}}
```

as well as `\proccfoot` for the central footers (the page number being centered by default):

```
290 \renewcommand{\proccfoot}{{\small DAFX-\thepage}}
```

The `\procfootvskip` length adjusts the footer vertical position:

```
291 \setlength{\procfootvskip}{1.2mm}
```

When checking the page numbering for papers which template already includes the page number, we may change the amount of vertical shift applied to move down by a few millimeters (default: 3mm) the footer when using the `movepagenumber` option. Then, use the `\procoptfootvskip` command:

```
292 \setlength{\procoptfootvskip}{4mm}
```

```
293
```

As soon as you remove the `movepagenumber` option, the footer comes back to its normal position.

5.1.8 Define front page and title commands

To generate the front page with `\maketitle`, we redefine usual \LaTeX commands:

`\author` • the proceedings' author/editor:

```
294 \author{\procpdfauthor}
```

`\title` • the proceedings' title:

```
295 \title{\DAFxname\ \DAFxaddress}
```

`\date` • the proceedings' date:

```
296 \date{\DAFxdate}
```

```
297
```

using the `\procpdfauthor` and `\procpdftitle` commands previously defined.

5.1.9 Special section titles (toc, index, biblio)

To change special section titles, redefine the \LaTeX commands already modified by `confproc`:

`\contentsname` • title of the table of contents (default: 'Conference Program'):

```
298 \renewcommand{\contentsname}{Day-by-Day Conference Program}
```

`\bibname` • title of the general bibliography (default: 'Full Bibliography'):

```
299 \renewcommand{\bibname}{General Bibliography}
```

`\indexname` • title of the index (default: 'Index of Authors'):

```
300 \renewcommand{\indexname}{List of Authors}
```

5.1.10 Declare paths to pictures, papers, texts...

We then define paths to different resources that the `example3optim.tex` file uses, *i.e.*:

`\PAPERPATH` • papers (containing both PDF papers and related folders to re-generate them):

```
301 \renewcommand{\PAPERPATH}{papers/}
```

`\PICPATH` • pictures (*e.g.* logos used in your first page and welcome letters):

```
302 \newcommand{\PCTPATH}{pictures/}
```

`\TEXTPATH` • texts (*e.g.* publishing informations, welcome letters, the paper switch):

```
303 \newcommand{\TEXTPATH}{}
```

`\BIBPATH` • bibliographies (*e.g.* 3 files as explained in sec. 5.7):

```
304 \newcommand{\BIBPATH}{}
```

5.1.11 Declare bibliographic files

`\procbibfile` We now define the file name of the main bibliography:

```
305 \newcommand{\procbibfile}{\BIBPATH exbiblio}
```

Several `.bib` files may be used to build the general bibliography (see sec. 5.7).

5.1.12 Chapter and section styles

Chapter and section styles can also be modified (for instance with the `titletoc` package) to adapt them to your needs. Remember that days appear as parts in the TOC and bookmarks, sessions as chapters, and papers as sections. Here is an example taken from the ICMC 2009 proceedings, where a TOC with left-aligned numbers is added with horizontal lines of different thickness before days and sessions. To do so, we first define our horizontal rulers:

```
306 \newcommand{\myaddhruletotoc}{\vspace*{0.1cm}%  
307 \noindent\protect\hrulefill\par\vspace*{-0.15cm}}  
308 \newcommand{\myaddthickhruletotoc}{\vspace*{0.5cm}%  
309 \noindent\protect\hrule height 0.6ex \hfill\par\vspace*{0.1cm}}
```

`\procdlay` We then redefine the `\procdlay` command to add an empty line in the TOC before each day:

```
310 \renewcommand{\procdlay}[1]{%  
311 \phantomsection%  
312 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}} % \centerline{#1}
```

`\session` as well as the `\session` command to add an empty line in the TOC before each session:

```
313 \renewcommand{\session}[1]{%  
314 \phantomsection%  
315 \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}
```

We can finally use the `titletoc` package and syntax to modify the TOC layout by adding the horizontal rulers. Note that given the way it is redefined, it will work properly for both left-aligned and right-aligned TOC numbers. Here is the definition for the main matter (`\mainmattertocstyle`):


`\mainmattertocstyle`

```
316 %% idem for left/right numbering  
317 \renewcommand{\mainmattertocstyle}{  
318 \titlecontents{part}[0pt]%  
319 {\addvspace{3mm}}%  
320 {\myaddthickhruletotoc\Large\bfseries}%  
321 {\myaddthickhruletotoc\Large\bfseries}%  
322 {}%
```

```

323     [\advvspace{0.5mm}]%
324 \titlecontents{chapter}[Opt]%
325     {\advvspace{2mm}}%
326     {\myaddhrule{toc}\large\bfseries\itshape}%
327     {\myaddhrule{toc}\large\bfseries\itshape}%
328     {}%
329     [\advvspace{0.5mm}]%
330 }

```

5.1.13 Title/author layout

`\texorpdfstring` The `\texorpdfstring` command allows for a different text in LaTeX and for the PDF (which is good for having different bookmark titles and table of contents entries). It is then used by default to add a line break between the paper title and the authors' names in the table of contents. We customize the title font style using the `\papertitlestyle` command as in:

```

331 %\renewcommand{\papertitlestyle}{}
332 \renewcommand{\papertitlestyle}{\texorpdfstring{}{\scshape}}

```

`\paperauthorstyle` that defines the paper's title in small capitals (default with the comment). The `\paperauthorstyle` command is used to customize the author font style. For instance, to replace the line break (between paper title and list of authors, in the table of contents) by a comma in the table of contents only (and not in the PDF bookmark) and have names right-flushed¹⁴:

```

333 %\renewcommand{\paperauthorstyle}{\texorpdfstring{\newline\itshape}{\break}}
334 \renewcommand{\paperauthorstyle}{\texorpdfstring{, \hfill}{\break}}

```

Again, the default appears with the comment sign.

`\proctocitleauthor` Consider now that we prefer to invert the paper title and the author list positions. We first redefine `\proctocitleauthor`, that defines how the paper title and author list are ordered and formatted in the TOC:

```

335 \renewcommand{\proctocitleauthor}[2]{%
336 \texorpdfstring{\paperauthorstyle #2}{\papertitlestyle #1}}%
337 {\paperstyle #1}}

```

We then redefine the formatting of the author list (italic) and paper title (boldface), and also which of the two commands is responsible for the line break (before the paper title):

```

338 \renewcommand{\paperauthorstyle}{\texorpdfstring{\itshape}{}}
339 \renewcommand{\papertitlestyle}{\texorpdfstring{\newlines}{\break}}

```

`\confstylechecktitle` In the case we want to check each title and author list, that can be useful to specify how the overlaid text is formatted. To do so, we define the format for the check title:

```

340 \renewcommand{\confstylechecktitle}{\vspace*{0.3cm} %
341 \bf \sc \Large \noindent \centerline}

```

`\confstylecheckauthor` and for the check author list:

```

342 \renewcommand{\confstylecheckauthor}{\large \it \noindent \centerline}

```

¹⁴Such option usually works well for short titles and author list:

My short title, FirstName1 LastName1, FirstName2 LastName2
but longer titles/author list may unfortunately give a different result, for instance:
My very long title that I like and do not want to shorten, FirstName1 LastName1, FirstName2 LastName2, FirstName3
LastName3, FirstName4 LastName4

5.1.14 Make the index

The last step of the preamble is to build the index:

```
343 \makeindex
344
```

5.1.15 Start the document: front matter (cover page and table of contents)

We can now start the document and its front matter by using:

```
345 %%===== PROCEEDINGS =====
346 \begin{document}
347
348 \frontmatter
```

5.1.16 Display the document layout

To check the document layout (thanks to the layout package), uncomment:

```
349 %%\layout
```

To specifically check the table of contents layout (thanks to the layouts package), uncomment:

```
350 %\begin{figure}
351 %   \setlayoutscale{0.8} \tocdiagram
352 %   \caption{Table of Contents entry parameters} \label{fig:tocp}
353 %\end{figure}
354 %\begin{figure}
355 %   \setlayoutscale{0.8} \currenttoc \tocdesign
356 %   \caption{Typical Table of Contents entry for this document}
357 %   \label{fig:thistoc}
358 %\end{figure}
```

Then can either be inserted at the end of the document (not changing page numbering, but may be forgotten as we do not so often check the last page) or at its beginning (changing page numbering but being the first page you see when opening it).

`\clearsingleordoublepage` To go to the next page (right-opening page in two-side mode), use:

```
359 %\clearsingleordoublepage
```

We then force the cover (ie. the first page of the proceedings) to be numbered '1':

```
360 \setcounter{page}{1}
```

5.1.17 Cover page

We now add a bookmark chapter in the front matter:

```
361 \pdfbookmark[0]{Preamble}{preamble}
```

That way, we ensure that all the sections in the front matter/preamble (cover page, welcome letters, etc) except the table of contents appear in a same bookmark as sub-items, thus reducing the number of lines appearing that do not deal with days, sessions, papers, etc. Note that we do it by hand. This is not as beautiful and general as if the class was doing it for you (which could have been done); however, not automatizing this bookmark entry allows the proceedings editor to decide if he wishes to link to the first pages or not.

We then include the first page and generate its bookmark entry:

```
362 \pdfbookmark[1]{Cover}{cover}
```

and produce the first page:

```
363 \maketitle
```

An alternative to the `\maketitle` command consists in inserting the first page as a PDF 1-page document generated with another software:

```
364 %\includepdf[noautoscale,pages=1,link]{\PICTPATH ex_1stpage.pdf}
```

5.1.18 Customize TOC formatting

We can now change some of the TOC formatting (centered, lower and small capitals TOC name) with the following hack:

(i) add a 1cm vertical space:

```
365 \addtocontents{toc}{\vskip 1cm}
```

(ii) add the TOC name in the text of the TOC contents, with the formatting we want:

```
366 \addtocontents{toc}{\centerline{\huge\textsc{Conference Program}}}
```

(iii) remove the TOC name in the TOC only (not in the PDF bookmarks):

```
367 \renewcommand{\contentsname}{\texorpdfstring{}{Conference Program}}
```

5.1.19 Publishing informations

Publishing informations are then given on page 2, inside the cover:

```
368 \newpage
369 \vspace*{1.7cm}
370 \pdfbookmark[1]{Publishing informations}{publishing}
```

with no header nor footer on this page:

```
371 \thispagestyle{empty}
```

We then provide the publishing information itself:

```
372 \noindent {\bf Published by:}\ Laboratory Name\ Department name\
373 School Name\ University Name\
374 \url{http://www.conferencesite.com}\
```

We also indicate the ISBN number:

```
375 \vspace*{0.15cm}\newline
376 \noindent {\bf ISBN: X-XXXX-XXXXXX}\
```

and the credits:

```
377 \vspace*{0.35cm}\newline
378 \noindent {\bf Credits:}\
379 Cover design: Firstname Lastname\
380 Logo photo: Firstname Lastname\
381 \LaTeX{} editor: Firstname Lastname\
```

If you think `confproc` is a time-saving solution, that's a good place to spread the word¹⁵.

```
382 using \LaTeX's 'confproc' package, version 0.8 (optional: by V. Verfaille)\
```

We then indicate where and when the proceedings were printed:

```
383 \vspace*{0.35cm}\newline
384 \noindent Printed in City by Print-Company --- Month Year
```

¹⁵Do not forget to send me a postcard too :-).

5.1.20 Welcome letters

To ensure next page is numbered and has proper headers/footers, use:

```
385 \otherpagestyle
```

Roman page numbers now start to appear. We include all welcome letters¹⁶:

```
386 %%-- Welcome letters
387 \clearsingleordoublepage
388 \vspace*{0.6cm}
389 \thisotherpagestyle
```

We create the bookmark entry by hand (so that you can remove it):

```
390 \pdfbookmark[1]{Welcome from Firstname Lastname}{welcome}
```

and the corresponding section (and table of contents entry):

```
391 \section*{Welcome from Firstname Lastname, Conference Chair}
```

Depending on the text length, you may use either 1.5 line spacing:

```
392 \vspace*{1.1cm}
393 \onehalfspace
394 \begin{center}
395   \begin{minipage}[h]{14cm}
396     Text of the welcome letter, with 1.5 lines spacing, blah blah...
397     Text of the welcome letter, with 1.5 lines spacing, blah blah...
398     Text of the welcome letter, with 1.5 lines spacing, blah blah...
399     Text of the welcome letter, with 1.5 lines spacing, blah blah...
400   \end{minipage}
401 \end{center}
```

or double line spacing (both are using the `setspace` style):

```
402 \doublespace
403 \begin{center}
404   \begin{minipage}[h]{14cm}
405     Text of the welcome letter, with 2 lines spacing, blah blah...
406     Text of the welcome letter, with 2 lines spacing, blah blah...
407     Text of the welcome letter, with 2 lines spacing, blah blah...
408     Text of the welcome letter, with 2 lines spacing, blah blah...
409   \end{minipage}
410 \end{center}
411 \singlespace
```

5.1.21 Table of contents

We now insert the conference program (table of contents):

```
412 \tableofcontents
```

```
413
```

N.B.: the bookmark entries are automatically generated from the table of contents.

5.1.22 Main matter: the papers

We can then beginning inserting the papers.

```
414 %%%==== BEGINNING OF PAPERS ====
```

Before doing so however, we use the following line to set a counter that is used by the `pdftk` option to properly count page numbers taking into account the preamble.

```
415 \setcounter{npagespreamble}{\arabic{page}-1} % only useful for the 'pdftk' option
```

¹⁶There is only one welcome letter in this example, but there usually are many others: from the faculty dean, the department dean, the conference chair, etc.



Why do we need to do so? Since page numbers change from roman to arabic, page numbers in the document do restart at 1, whereas for the PDF document (when opened into a viewer), page numbers are different and go on increasing! Therefore, the export of individual papers with `pdftk`¹⁷ could not work without this trick, that I still did not figure out how to hide from the user.

`\mainmatter` We now (and only after last line) switch to the main matter and to arabic page numbering:
416 `\mainmatter`

New [v0.7]

Since version 0.5, switching to the main matter does not anymore automatically changes the style of table of contents entries.

`\mainmattertocstyle` We then explicitly use the optional style:
417 `\mainmattertocstyle`

and can even redefine it in the preamble (it uses the `titletoc` package). Then, we include the file with all papers' information organized with a switch:

418 `\input{\TEXTPATH expapersswitch}`

We then insert the papers, day-by-day and session-by-session.

`\procdays` Remember that from the bookmark structure point of view, a day appears as a part:
419 `\procdays{Day 1}`

`\session` a session appears as a chapter:
420 `\session{Oral Session 1}`

`\paperid` and a paper appears as a section. Each paper is inserted by the `\paperid{ID}{PDFname}` command, that uses the switch in `expapersswitch.tex` to get the information about paper ID:
421 `\paperid{45}{p_001}`
422 `\paperid{21}{p_003}`

We also insert a poster session with one paper:

423 `\session{Poster Session 1}`
424 `\paperid{33}{p_005}`

and a second oral presentation session with two more papers:

425 `\procdays{Day 2}`
426 `\session{Oral Session 2}`
427 `\paperid{75}{p_007}`
428 `\paperid{27}{p_009}`

429
430 `%%==== END OF PAPERS ====`

5.1.23 Back matter

`\backmatter` After all papers are inserted, we switch to the document back matter (bibliography & index):
431 `\backmatter`

Once again, we use the optional style for table of contents entries:

432 `\backmattertocstyle`

that we may have redefine it in the preamble (it uses the `titletoc` package).

¹⁷Get `pdftk` at: <http://www.accesspdf.com/pdftk/>

5.1.24 General bibliography

The general bibliography is inserted with the following style:

```
433 \bibliographystyle{newapave}
```

This DAFx-06 style is a modification of the newapa style: the year is indicated at the end, before the back-references, instead of being between parenthesis right after the list of authors. If you prefer the newapa style (or any other style), simply replace this last line by:

```
434 %\bibliographystyle{newapa}
```

and comment the line that inserts the newapave style.

The bibliography is then inserted:

```
435 {\footnotesize\bibliography{\procbibfile}}
```

Note that the general bibliography may be very long. Changing the font size (for instance to `\footnotesize` as in the previous line) may then be a good idea.

5.1.25 Index of authors

`\insertindex` We finally insert the index:

```
436 \insertindex
437 \end{document}
```

```
438 \example3optim)
```

5.2 expapersswitch.tex: Paper switch!

Let us now take a look at the paper switch, which is central to this version of the proceedings. It contains a switch to proceedings papers, allowing to work on the document without needing to know yet the final order of papers (which is useful when working in parallel on the document and on the conference program).

New [v0.7]
`\procpaper` Version 0.7 of `confproc` redefines the paper insertion interface with `\procpaper`, that uses key-values options and thus clarifies the L^AT_EX code. We define the `\paperid` command:

`\paperid`

```
439 \newcommand{*expapersswitch}
440 \newcommand{\paperid}[2]{
```

`\paperswitch` Inside the switch, the `\paperswitch` command is set to the paper reference:

```
441 \renewcommand{\paperswitch}{#1}
```

Papers can still be inserted using the pre-version 0.5 `\procinsertpaper` command (see next section), but it is strongly recommended to forget it and use the new interface of the `\procpaper` command (version 0.5 and above).

5.2.1 First and old way: pre-version 0.5 interface

To insert the first paper (ID=45) with the pre-version 0.5 command (compatibility check), we first define commands to help making this old code readable:

```
442 %===== PAPER ID = 45 =====
443 \ifnum\paperswitch=45 {
444 \newcommand{\papertitle}{Templates for One Author}
445 \newcommand{\paperauthors}{Alfred Alabama}
446 \newcommand{\paperindex}{\index{Alabama, Alfred}}
447 \newcommand{\paperref}{\paperswitch}
```

```

448 \newcommand{\paperpagenum}{6}
449 \newcommand{\papercite}{Serra:1996:sms,%
450   Moorer:2000:AES:audio:millenium,Arfib:1998:DAFx,%
451   Mitra:Kaiser:1993:DSP:handbook}

```

\proccinsertpaper We then use the old \proccinsertpaper command to insert papers¹⁸:

```

452 \proccinsertpaper{\LaTeXxShift{} \LaTeXyShift}{\paperpagenum}%
453   {\paperref}{\papertitle}{\paperauthors}{\paperindex}{\papercite}%
454   {#2}{\pdfbookmark[2]{Alfred Alabama}{#2.author1}}
455 \fi

```

As we can see, it still works; this is however too ugly. Why would you still want to use such an bad interface to set arguments?

5.2.2 Second and preferred way: shorter and more readable

\proccpaper
New [v0.7]

Thanks to the new \proccpaper command, it is much simpler and more readable to insert papers: except the paper file name, the other arguments are optional, and their name is clear enough! The lines of next code correspond to what is generated by the generateswitch.pl Perl script (see sec. 7.4), which converts the .csv data into L^AT_EX code to insert in this current file:

```

456 \ifnum\paperswitch=21
457 \proccpaper[xshift=\LaTeXxShift{}, yshift=\LaTeXyShift{}, npages=5, switch=21,%
458   title={Templates for One Author with Two Affiliations},%
459   author={Bob Boogie-Woogie},%
460   index={\index{Boogie-Woogie, Bob}},%
461   cite={Serra:1996:sms,Moorer:2000:AES:audio:millenium,Arfib:1998:DAFx,%
462     Haykin:1991:adaptive:filter},%
463   bookmark={\pdfbookmark[2]{Bob Boogie-Woogie}{#2.author1}}%
464   ]{#2}
465 \fi
466
467 \ifnum\paperswitch=27
468 \proccpaper[xshift=\LaTeXxShift{}, yshift=\LaTeXyShift{}, npages=7, switch=27,%
469   title={Templates f'or F'o\"ur ÃAuthors},%
470   author={J{o}{hn} J\"oe, K'e~{n}t K~{i}ng, L'ou L'ou,%
471     M'anfr'ed J. M^ost\u{e}k{i}},%
472   index={\index{J"oe, J{o}{hn}}\index{K~{i}ng, K'e~{n}t}%
473     \index{L'ou, L'ou}}\index{M^ost\u{e}k{i}, M'anfr'ed J.}},%
474   cite={Serra:1996:sms,Moorer:2000:AES:audio:millenium,Dutilleux:1991,%
475     Fitz:Haken:2003:Web:morphing:loris},%
476   bookmark={\pdfbookmark[2]{J{o}{hn} J"oe}{#2.author1}}%
477     \pdfbookmark[2]{K'e~{n}t K~{i}ng}{#2.author2}}%
478     \pdfbookmark[2]{L'ou L'ou}{#2.author3}}%
479     \pdfbookmark[2]{M'anfr'ed J. M^ost\u{e}k{i}}{#2.author4}}%
480   ]{#2}
481 \fi
482
483 \ifnum\paperswitch=33
484 \proccpaper[xshift=\LaTeXxShift{}, yshift=\LaTeXyShift{}, npages=4, switch=33,%
485   title = {Templates for Two Authors},%
486   author={Alfred Alabama, Chris Christmas},%
487   index={\index{Alabama, Alfred}}\index{Christmas, Chris}},%
488   cite={Serra:1996:sms,Moorer:2000:AES:audio:millenium},%

```

¹⁸This command has 9 arguments that must be used in this exact order: (i) X and Y shifts (with a space in between, as in '10 12'); (ii) the number of pages; (iii) the paper reference; (iv) the title; (v) the list of authors; (vi) the index entries; (vii) the citations for the general bibliography; (viii) the name of the PDF file to insert; (ix) the bookmark entries for the authors. Hopefully, Andreas Matthias suggested me to use key-values options, and it is no more useful to do it this old way!

```

489     Arfib:1998:DAFx,Askenfelt:1976:automatic:transcription},
490     bookmark={\pdfbookmark[2]{Alfred Alabama}{#2.author1}%
491     \pdfbookmark[2]{Chris Christmas}{#2.author2}}%
492   ]{#2}
493 \fi
494
495 \ifnum\paperswitch=75
496   \procpaper[xshift=\LaTeXxShift{}, yshift=\LaTeXyShift{}, npages=6, switch=75,%
497     title={Templates for Three Authors},%
498     author={Bob Boogie-Woogie, Chris Christmas, Don Didon},%
499     index={\index{Boogie-Woogie, Bob}\index{Christmas, Chris}%
500     \index{Didon, Don}},%
501     cite={Serra:1996:sms,Moorer:2000:AES:audio:millenium,%
502     Arfib:1998:DAFx,Egozy:1995:MIT:features:gesture},%
503     bookmark={\pdfbookmark[2]{Bob Boogie-Woogie}{#2.author1}%
504     \pdfbookmark[2]{Chris Christmas}{#2.author2}%
505     \pdfbookmark[2]{Don Didon}{#2.author3}}%
506   ]{#2}
507 \fi

We're done with the papers data, but we must not forget to close the curly brace!
508 }
509 \expapersswitch)

```

5.3 expages.tex: Get page numbers and recompile all papers

In the case where inserted papers have headers/footers, we may have to recompile them all with the proper page numbers. Before doing so, compile the proceedings enough times so that the table of contents is generated and inserted. Then, use the page number indicated for each paper to edit accordingly the expages.tex file. An example is provided here:

```

510 <*expages>
511 \newcommand{\setpagenumber}[1]{
512   \newcommand{\paperswitch}{#1}
513   \ifnum\paperswitch=45 {\setcounter{page}{1}}\fi
514   \ifnum\paperswitch=21 {\setcounter{page}{7}}\fi
515   \ifnum\paperswitch=27 {\setcounter{page}{13}}\fi
516   \ifnum\paperswitch=33 {\setcounter{page}{17}}\fi
517   \ifnum\paperswitch=75 {\setcounter{page}{23}}\fi
518 }
519 </expages>

```

You may then recompile all papers (use the buildpapers Unix script, see sec. 7.12), provided that they all have the corresponding line in their preamble:

```
\input{../../expages.tex}\setpagenumber{01}
```

where 01 is the paper reference (to be changed for each paper). Using the following:

```
\setcounter{page}{1}
```

would of course have the equivalent effect, except that you would have to re-edit each paper after changing your program order.

5.4 exsessions.tex: Organize the conference program by sessions/day

Depending on the conference duration, the program may feature a few sessions during 2 or 3 days, or many sessions during 4 to 7 days (or even more). Then, the table of contents and the bookmarks may be organized:

- by sessions and then by related papers (short conferences): see sec. 5.4.1;

- by day, then by sessions and then by papers (long conferences, to avoid a too long list of sessions in the PDF bookmark): see sec. 5.4.2.

The mechanism used in `confproc` to build the table of contents and bookmarks is based on section levels: days are inserted in the table of contents and bookmarks as parts, whereas sessions are inserted as chapters and papers as sections.

Note that the `confproc` **does not handle programs with parallel sessions**. It is then up to you to decide in which order they may appear in the table of contents.

5.4.1 `exsessions.tex`: Program organized by sessions

For a small size conference, if not using days (comment the `\procdays` lines in the example), you will obtain the table of contents corresponding to Tab 3. The corresponding bookmark is depicted closed in Tab. 4, opened at its first level in Tab. 5, and opened at its second level in Tab. 6.

Conference Program	
<i>Oral Session 1</i>	
1	Templates for One Author <i>Alfred Alabama</i>
7	Templates for One Author with Two Affiliations <i>Bob Boogie-Woogie</i>
<i>Poster Session 1</i>	
11	Templates for Two Authors <i>Alfred Alabama, Chris Christmas</i>
<i>Oral Session 2</i>	
15	Templates for Three Authors <i>Bob Boogie-Woogie, Chris Christmas, Don Didon</i>
21	Templates for Four Authors <i>John Jõe, Kéñt Kíng, Lòu Lòu, Mànfréd J. Mòstěki</i>
27	Full Bibliography
28	Index of Authors

Table 3: Example of table of contents for a conference organized by sessions.

► Preamble
Program
► Oral Session 1
► Poster Session 1
► Oral Session 2
Full Bibliography
Index of Authors

Table 4: Closed bookmarks for a conference organized by sessions.

- ▼ Preamble
 - Cover
 - Publishing informations
 - Welcome from Firstname Lastname
 - Program
- ▼ Oral Session 1
 - ▶ Template for One Author
 - ▶ Template for One Author with Two Affiliations
- ▼ Poster Session 1
 - ▶ Template for Two Authors
- ▼ Oral Session 2
 - ▶ Template for Three Authors
 - ▶ Template for Four Authors
- Full Bibliography
- Index of Authors

Table 5: *First-level opened bookmarks for a conference organized by sessions.*

- ▼ Preamble
 - Cover
 - Publishing informations
 - Welcome from Firstname Lastname
 - Program
- ▼ Oral Session 1
 - ▼ Template for One Author
 - Alfred Alabama
 - ▼ Template for One Author with Two Affiliations
 - Bob Boogie-Woogie
- ▼ Poster Session 1
 - ▼ Template for Two Authors
 - Alfred Alabama
 - Chris Christmas
- ▼ Oral Session 2
 - ▼ Template for Three Authors
 - Bob Boogie-Woogie
 - Chris Christmas
 - Don Didon
 - ▼ Template for Four Authors
 - John Jõe
 - Kéñt Kîng
 - Lòu Lóu
 - Månfred J. Mõstëkí
- Full Bibliography
- Index of Authors

Table 6: *Second-level opened bookmarks for a conference organized by sessions.*

5.4.2 Program organized by days

In the case of bigger conferences with a program organized by day, you will get the table of contents corresponding to Tab 7. The corresponding bookmark is depicted closed in Tab. 8, opened at its first level in Tab. 9, and opened at its second level Tab. 10.

Conference Program	
Day 1	
Oral Session 1	
1	Templates for One Author <i>Alfred Alabama</i>
7	Templates for One Author with Two Affiliations <i>Bob Boogie-Woogie</i>
Poster Session 1	
11	Templates for Two Authors <i>Alfred Alabama, Chris Christmas</i>
Day 2	
Oral Session 2	
15	Templates for Three Authors <i>Bob Boogie-Woogie, Chris Christmas, Don Didon</i>
21	Templates for Four Authors <i>John Jöe, Kéñt Kíng, Lòu Lòu, Mánfréd J. Mòstžeki</i>
27	Full Bibliography
28	Index of Authors

Table 7: Example of table of contents for a conference organized by day.

► Preamble
Program
► Day 1
► Day 2
Full Bibliography
Index of Authors

Table 8: Closed bookmarks for a conference organized by days.

- ▼ Preamble
 - Cover
 - Publishing informations
 - Welcome from Firstname Lastname
 - Program
- ▼ Day 1
 - ▶ Oral Session 1
 - ▶ Poster Session 1
- ▼ Day 2
 - ▶ Oral Session 2
- Full Bibliography
- Index of Authors

Table 9: *First-level opened bookmarks for a conference organized by days.*

- ▼ Preamble
 - Cover
 - Publishing informations
 - Welcome from Firstname Lastname
 - Program
- ▼ Day 1
 - ▼ Oral Session 1
 - ▶ Template for One Author
 - ▶ Template for One Author with Two Affiliations
 - ▼ Poster Session 1
 - ▶ Template for Two Authors
- ▼ Day 2
 - ▼ Oral Session 2
 - ▶ Template for Three Authors
 - ▶ Template for Four Authors
- Full Bibliography
- Index of Authors

Table 10: *Second-level opened bookmarks for a conference organized by days.*

5.5 `exprogram.csv`: Generate the conference program from a CSV file

It may be easier to collect data about the papers from a server, manipulate them in a spreadsheet software (for example MS Excel), and then generate the program from a `.csv` file. The provided `generateswitch.pl` Perl script (see sec. 7.4) generates the corresponding `expaperswitch.tex` and `exsessions.tex` files for the example. First, let's take a look at the following CSV file, that contains the example's conference program¹⁹:

```
520 (*exprogram)
521 Type,Paper Number,PC Decision,Pages,Title,File Name,Generated,Citations,Auth1 First Name,Auth1 L
522 Type,-2,0,,,,,First Name,Last Name,First Name,Last Name,First Name,Last Name, F.Name, L.Name,,
523 Day,0,,,"Day 1: September 18, 2007",,,,,,,,,,
524 Session,0,,,"Oral Session 1",,,,,,,,,,
525 paper,45,0,6,Templates for One Author,p_001,LaTeX,"Serra:1996:sms,Moorer:2000:AES:audio:millen
526 paper,21,0,5,Templates for One Author with Two Affiliations,p_003,LaTeX,"Serra:1996:sms,Moorer:
527 Poster Session,0,,,"Poster Session 1",,,,,,,,,,
528 paper,33,P,4,Templates for Two Authors,p_005,LaTeX,"Serra:1996:sms,Moorer:2000:AES:audio:millen
529 Day,0,,,"Day 2: September 19, 2007",,,,,,,,,,
530 Session,0,,,"Oral Session 2",,,,,,,,,,
531 paper,75,0,6,Templates for Three Authors,p_007,LaTeX,"Serra:1996:sms,Moorer:2000:AES:audio:mill
532 paper,27,0,7,Templates fÅšr FÅšÅijr ÅÅauthors,p_009,LaTeX,"Serra:1996:sms,Moorer:2000:AES:audio:m
533 (/exprogram)
```

As expected from its first line, it contains the following columns:

1. **Type**: the script will accept the following values:

- use `Type` for the items/lines to be ignored;
- `Day`: use `Day`;
- `Session`: for oral session, use `Session`, `Paper Session` or `Oral Session`; for poster sessions, use `poster session`; for demonstration sessions, use `Demo Session`;
- `Paper`: use `paper` or `oral` for oral presentation; `poster` for poster presentation; `demo` for demo. The 3 output identical code anyway: the different values only help to organize the program!.

N.B.: these values are not case sensitively processed by the `generateswitch.pl` Perl script.

2. **Number**: paper number or reference, often generated by the submission system. It will be used for paper insertion, for ordering the program, etc.
3. **PC Decision**: oral or poster. It does not change the \LaTeX generated code, so you may not use it;
4. **Pages**: number of pages;
5. **Title**: paper/session title;
6. **File Name**: name of the corresponding `.pdf` file;
7. **Generated**: software used to generate the `.pdf` files (e.g.: `LaTeX`, `Word`): this allows to use different X and Y offset values (we however used the same value for all papers of one kind);
8. **Citations**: list of bibliography items for the general bibliography (ex: `\cite{bibitem1,bibitem2,bibitem3}`); blank if no general bibliography;
9. **Auth1 First Name**: first name of author 1;

¹⁹This is normal that this text goes on after the margin. Please check the generated file if you wish to read each line.

10. **Auth1 Last Name:** last name of author 1;
11. **Auth2 First Name:** first name of author 2, blank if none;
12. **Auth2 Last Name:** last name of author 2, blank if none;
13. **Auth3 First Name:** first name of author 3, blank if none;
14. **Auth3 Last Name:** last name of author 3, blank if none;
15. **Auth4 First Name:** first name of author 4, blank if none;
16. **Auth4 Last Name:** last name of author 4, blank if none;
17. **comments:** there is an extra column, that is not used by the script.

5.6 exbiblio.bib: Common bibliography items

Let us now take a look at the common bibliographic items of this example:

```

534 (*exbiblio)
535 %-- references to a book
536 @book{Mitra:Kaiser:1993:DSP:handbook,
537   Author = {S.~K. Mitra and J.~F. Kaiser},
538   Title = {Handbook for Digital Signal Processing},
539   Publisher = {J. Wiley {\&} Sons},
540   Year = {1993}}
541
542 @book{Haykin:1991:adaptive:filter,
543   Author = {Simon Haykin},
544   Title = {Adaptive Filter Theory},
545   Publisher = {Prentice Hall},
546   Address = {Englewood Cliffs},
547   Edition = {Second},
548   Year = {1991}}
549
550 %-- reference to a book chapter
551 @inbook{Serra:1996:sms,
552   Author = {X. Serra},
553   Chapter = {Musical Sound Modeling with Sinusoids plus Noise},
554   Publisher = {G. D. Poli, A. Piccialli, S. T. Pope and C. Roads,%
555     Eds.~Swets~\&~Zeitlinger},
556   Title = {Musical Signal Processing},
557   Pages = {91--122},
558   Year = {1996}}
559
560 %-- reference to a journal paper
561 @article{Moorer:2000:AES:audio:millenium,
562   Author = {James A. Moorer},
563   Title = {Audio in the New Millennium},
564   Journal = {Journal of the {AES}},
565   Volume = 48,
566   Number = 5,
567   Year = 2000,
568   Month = may,
569   Pages = {490--498}}
570
571 %-- reference to a proceeding paper
572 @inproceedings{Arfib:1998:DAFx,

```

```

573 Author = {D. Arfib},
574 Booktitle = {Proc. of the COST-G6 Workshop on Digital Audio Effects %
575   (DAFx-98)},
576 Title = {Different Ways to Write Digital Audio Effects Programs},
577 Address = {Barcelona, Spain},
578 Pages = {188--91},
579 Year = {1998}}
580
581 %-- reference to a technical report
582 @techreport{Askenfelt:1976:automatic:transcription,
583   Author = {A. Askenfelt},
584   Title = {Automatic notation of played music (status report)},
585   Institution = {{STL-QPSR, Vol. 1, pp. 1--11}},
586   Year = {1976}}
587
588 %-- reference to a master thesis
589 @mastersthesis{Egozy:1995:MIT:features:gesture,
590   Author = {E.~B. Egozy},
591   title = {Deriving musical control features from a real-time timbre %
592     analysis of the clarinet},
593   School = {Massachusetts Institute of Technology},
594   Year = {1995}}
595
596 %-- reference to a PhD thesis
597 @phdthesis{Dutilleux:1991,
598   Author = {P. Dutilleux},
599   School = {University of Aix-Marseille II},
600   Title = {Vers la machine \‘a sculpter le son, modification en %
601     temps-r\’eel des caract\’eristiques fr\’equentielles et temporelles%
602     des sons},
603   Year = {1991}}
604
605 %-- reference to a web page
606 @unpublished{Fitz:Haken:2003:Web:morphing:loris,
607   Author = {K. Fitz and L. Haken},
608   Title = {{Current Research in Real-time Sound Morphing}},
609   Note = {Available at \href{http://www.cerlsoundgroup.org/RealTimeMorph/}%
610     {http://www.cerlsoundgroup.org/RealTimeMorph/}},
611   Year = {Accessed March 08, 2006}}
612 </exbiblio>

```

Please refer to sec. 5.7 for details about the bibliography merging process.

5.7 General bibliography

5.7.1 Making the general bibliography

For the DAFx-06 proceedings (but not for the provided example), we worked with three bibliography files in order to simplify the bibliography merging process:

- `exbibconcat.bib` containing all citations for all papers;
- `exbibcommon.bib` containing common bibliography items, added one by one during the merging process;
- `exbibstrings.bib` containing all common strings (conference names, journal names, etc), to ensure coherence among citations from same sources (journal, conference).

Here is how those files were created and used:

1. create the complete bibliography:

- (a) for each paper, change its bib item tags to a tag that cannot be common to 2 papers (we used a format starting with the paper number: `paperID:originaltag`)²⁰;
- (b) ensure that each paper has a proper list of bibliography items using those new tags;
- (c) add individual paper bibliography items into the file named `exbibconcat.bib`;
- (d) set the proceedings bibliography file to:

```
\renewcommand{\procbibfile}{\BIBPATH exbibconcat.bib}
```

- (e) run \LaTeX with the complete bibliography (using the `compil=bibmerge` option that uses `\nocite{*}`) so bib items are include twice: by the paper and globally. You are now ready to merge bibliographies.

2. merge the bibliographic items (long step):

- (a) first, add the `exbibcommon.bib` file to the list of bibliography files by setting the proceedings bibliography files to:

```
\renewcommand{\procbibfile}{\BIBPATH exbibcommon.bib,%  
\BIBPATH exbibconcat.bib}
```

- (b) for each item appearing multiple times:

- i. create a corresponding entry in the `exbibcommon.bib` file;
- ii. remove all of its appearances in `exbibconcat.bib`;
- iii. take this opportunity to correct inconsistent information (title, list of authors, page numbers, etc)! Note that this process requires a lot of time, as it is the slowest in the bibliography merging process.

3. merge the bibliography strings:

- (a) add `exbibstrings.bib` to the list of bibliography files:

```
\renewcommand{\procbibfile}{\BIBPATH exbibstrings.bib,%  
\BIBPATH exbibcommon.bib,\BIBPATH exbibconcat.bib}
```

- (b) merge the common strings. For each string shared by several items:

- i. define the corresponding string in the `exbibstring.bib` file. For instance, for the IEEE Transactions on Acoustics, Speech, and Signal Processing, add:

```
@string{IEEE-TASSP = "{IEEE Trans. Acoust., Speech,  
and Signal Proc.}"}
```

- ii. use such definitions (*e.g.* IEEE-TASSP) to replace any of its appearance in `exbibconcat.bib`. For instance, use:

```
@article{paper027:McAulay86,  
  Author = {Robert J. McAulay and Thomas F. Quatieri},  
  Title = {Speech Analysis/Synthesis Based on a%  
  Sinusoidal Representation},  
  Journal = IEEE-TASSP,  
  Volume = {34},  
  Number = {4},  
  Pages = {744-754},  
  Year = {1986}}
```

²⁰You may ask authors to do so when sending them editor's notes.

4. optimal: update each paper once the general bibliography is ok:

(a) for each paper:

- i. generate a new bibliography file (e.g. `p_027.bib` for `p_027.tex`) that only includes its non-common bibliography items remaining in `exbibconcat.bib`;
- ii. edit each paper so that it uses both this new bibliography file (`p_027.bib`) together with `exbibcommon.bib` and `exbibstrings.bib`. This will provide common and coherent contents to both local and general bibliographies. Since `p_027.tex` is placed in the `papers/pdftex/p_027/` folder, its bibliography insertion will then become something like:

```
\bibliography{../../exbibstrings.bib,%  
              ../../exbibcommon.bib,p_027.bib}
```

(b) re-run \LaTeX on all papers, using the `buildpapers` Unix script (see sec. 7.12). This script also copies all resulting PDFs to the right place.

(c) if you did not use the previous script, copy all PDF papers to the `papers/` folder. The `buildcppdfpapers` Unix script (see sec. 7.13) can do it for you, for instance if you changed some of the papers but not all, and do not remember which were to be copied.

You are now done with bibliography merging, and are ready to re-run \LaTeX on the proceedings using the `compil=backref` options as many times as necessary to provide proper back-references and page numbering.

5.7.2 Which bib styles for the templates?

Concerning the paper bibliography style, each conference has its own style, often derived from other ones. For instance, the DAFx-06 templates were using the `IEEEbib.bst` style. It however is quite old (1993), and not as compact as the latest `IEEEtran.bst`. As the DAFx proceedings use the order of appearance and not alphabetical sorting (as do the IEEE publications it was inspired from), the more recent `IEEEtranS.bst` style was not suited. The DAFx-06 templates were corrected so as to use `IEEEtran.bst` instead of `IEEEbib.bst` before insertion of papers into the proceedings.

5.7.3 Which bib styles for the general bibliography?

The general bibliography style may be a bit different, as it does not require item numbering in order to not get confused with each paper's bibliography item number. Moreover, alphabetical order is more suited as it simplifies the search for any particular author cited. Therefore, we need to use a bibliographic style on its own, other than the paper templates one!

The style to use has to look more like APA style, with the first author's last name coming first. For that reason, we used the `newapa` style, and derived the `newapave` style with minor cosmetic tweaking (those styles have no numbering, the author list is like "Lastname, F.", etc).

5.7.4 Right-flushing the biblio back-references

Back-references provided by the `hyperref` package are a list of numbers at the end of the bibliographic items (after the last dot). The example using the `newapa` bibliographic style would provide:

Arfib, D. (1998). Different ways to write digital audio effects programs. In *Proc. of the COST-G6 Workshop on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx-98)*, Barcelona, Spain, (pp. 188–91). 6, 11, 16, 22, 29

We modified `newapa.bst` (resp. `newapa.sty`) by making slight changes (but in many places), and renamed it `newapave.bst` (resp. `newapave.sty`) for the DAFx-06 proceedings. This modification process was carried out to provide some changes and adjustments in the bibliography style and layout²¹, as well as right-flushed back-references. Using the `newapa` bibliographic style, the previous example is then modified into something like:

Arfib, D. Different ways to write digital audio effects programs. In
Proc. of the COST-G6 Workshop on Digital Audio Effects (DAFx-98), Barcelona, Spain, pp. 188–91. 1998. [6](#), [11](#), [16](#), [22](#), [29](#)

Together with the color links, back-references are easier to see when they are right-flushed than when they are left-flushed.



To apply the right-flushed back-references to another style, here is the only trick to keep from the hack. Edit the function that displays the last item of the bibliographic element list (`output.year.check` in our case, because it was reformatted) so as to add a `\hfill` at the end of that command (the year definition in our example):

```
FUNCTION {output.year.check}
{ year empty$
{ ‘empty year in ‘ cite$ * warning$ }
{ write$
‘ (“ year * extra.label * ‘)” *
mid.sentence ’output.state :=
}
if$
}
```

Important note: if the last displayed item (in our case, the year) was not in last position, you also need to edit the following functions defined under the `FUNCTION {name}` format (not exhaustive list): `article`, `book`, `booklet`, `inbook`, `incollection`, `inproceedings`, `manual`, `masterthesis`, `misc`, `phdthesis`, `proceedings`, `techreport`, and `unpublished`. For instance:

```
FUNCTION {misc}
{ output.bibitem
format.authors output
author format.key output % added
output.year.check % added
title howpublished new.block.checkb
format.title output
new.block
howpublished output
new.block
note output
fin.entry
}
```

was replaced with:

```
FUNCTION {misc}
{ output.bibitem
format.authors output
author format.key output
title howpublished new.block.checkb
format.title output
new.block
howpublished output
}
```

²¹no parenthesis around page numbers nor around the year; and year is placed at the end.

```

new.block
note output
output.year.check          % !!! MOVED !!!
fin.entry

```

The Unix `diff` command may help you to compare the original (`newapa.bst`) and modified (`newapave.bst`) versions of the bibliography style files.

5.7.5 Ensuring that the biblio back-references are right-flushed

With this hack in the bibliography style, all bibliography back-references should appear as right-flushed. However, it sometimes does not work, due to some \LaTeX formatting mechanisms I am not competent to identify. Then, sometimes, a list of numbers will see its last item appearing alone on next line, even though there obviously was enough space on the previous line where the other numbers appear. I noticed that some minor reformatting of the concerned bibliographic item could solve this issue. There is no way to automatically do this, nor general rule, only a few tricks I found efficient to solve this issue in 6 items of the DAFx-06 proceedings' general bibliography:

- moving from optional to compulsory a bib item field;
- replacing a `---` by a `--` (arg! so ugly...);
- adding a missing space (*e.g.* between the thesis number and the URL);
- using hyphenation at your advantage: you may sometimes get a reference for which the layout will not hyphen the end of the title, just before the last line (I suspect this is what messes the whole process behind the `\hfill` command).

5.8 \LaTeX runs

We now provide the \LaTeX compilation steps to build this example (wich is also done by the `buildproc.sh` script provided in section 7.5):

1. generates the first `.aux`, and `.idx` files (use option `papers=empty` to go faster, and `bib=backref` for the bibliography):

```
pdflatex example3optim.tex
```
2. generates the general bibliography and `.brf`, `.bbl` files:

```
bibtex example3optim
```
3. generates the author index:

```
makeindex -s confproc2.ist example3optim.idx
```
4. inserts table of contents and index, update their page numbers and internal links for next run (use option `papers=final,bib=backref` to ensure internal links are correct):

```
pdflatex example3optim.tex
```
5. insert table of contents and index with proper page numbers, and remove links to bibliography for next run (`papers=final,bib=final`):

```
pdflatex example3optim.tex
```

6 More about building conference proceedings (for warriors)

6.1 Compilation steps: class option switch

When built, the current example with general bibliography requires various L^AT_EX runs with different option sets. Since L^AT_EX-runs can only be automatized with Unix scripts when options are not changed, it is proposed to automatize the option sets switch too. Two files are created, that the script renames when needed, so that the main example file inserts the proper file.

The `example4optim.tex` example file is generated from `example3optim.tex`, after removing the first lines that declare the document class and its options.

6.1.1 Options set for non-final L^AT_EX runs: `exclasspre.tex`

This first file (`exclasspre.tex`) is used for all L^AT_EX runs except the final one. In this example, it adds headers on all pages (`headers=allpages`), and move the footer (`movepagenumber`) so that we can check page numbers. Also, the option `compil=bibbackref` creates proper back-references.

```
613 <*exclasspre>
614 \documentclass[letterpaper,10pt,twoside,twosidepapers,%
615   electronic,% [printed] | electronic
616   papers=countpages,% empty | draft | [final] | countpages
617   headers=allpages,% none | pdfonly | exceptpdf | [allpages]
618   paperselec=all, %[all] | p_001 | p_fake
619   bib=backref,%
620   colorheaders=red,%
621   verbose,%
622   pdftk,%
623   pdftkfolder={pdftk_info/},%
624   pdftksubject={DAFx-06 Conference},%
625   movepagenumber,%
626   hyperref={bookmarksdepth=1,bookmarksopen,bookmarksopenlevel=0,%
627     citecolor=colorforcite,linkcolor=colorforlink,urlcolor=colorforurl},%
628   geometry={text={175truemm,226truemm},% A4 & letter
629     inner=0.805in,top=29.15mm,bottom=24.5mm,footskip=9.68mm,voffset=-5mm},%letter
630 ]{confproc}
631 </exclasspre>
```

As previously said, the `draft` option of `pdfpages` does not generate the bookmark data. So, we do not use it for any of those final L^AT_EX runs. You can of course use it any time during the layout fine tuning, conference program definition, etc.

6.1.2 Options set for final L^AT_EX run on the paperback version: `exclasslastpb.tex`

This second file is used for the final L^AT_EX run: it removes options such as `movepagenumber`, and uses headers only on the pages where it is necessary (using `headers=exceptpdf`, as you may have finished the page numberings before). It also uses the `compil=last` option, in order to insert the last page of each paper with proper back-references generated during the previous L^AT_EX runs:

```
632 <*exclasslastpb>
633 \documentclass[letterpaper,10pt,twoside,twosidepapers,%
634   printed,% [printed] | electronic
635   papers=final,% empty | draft | [final] | countpages
636   headers=exceptpdf,% none | pdfonly | exceptpdf | [allpages]
637   paperselec=all, %[all] | p_001 | p_fake
638   bib=last,%
639   pdftk,%
640   pdftkfolder={pdftk_info/},%
```

```

641 pdftksubject={DAFx-06 Conference},%
642 binding=5mm,% [0mm] -> adjust the binding depending on the proceedings thickness
643 hyperref={bookmarksdepth=1,bookmarksopen,bookmarksopenlevel=0,%
644   citecolor=colorforcite,linkcolor=colorforlink,urlcolor=colorforurl},%
645 geometry={text={175truemm,226truemm},% A4 & letter
646   inner=0.805in,top=29.15mm,bottom=24.5mm,footskip=9.68mm,voffset=-5mm},%letter
647 ]{confproc}
648 </exclasslastpb>

```

6.1.3 Options set for final L^AT_EX run on the electronic version: exclasslastel.tex

This third file differs from the second by its **electronic** option, and the geometry settings (the document has no inner margin):

```

649 <*exclasslastel>
650 \documentclass[letterpaper,10pt,twoside,twosidepapers,%
651   electronic,% [printed] | electronic
652   papers=final,% empty | draft | [final] | countpages
653   headers=exceptpdf,% none | pdfonly | exceptpdf | [allpages]
654   paperselec=all, %[all] | p_001 | p_fake
655   bib=last,%
656   pdftk,%
657   pdftkfolder={pdftk_info/},%
658   pdftksubject={DAFx-06 Conference},%
659   binding=0mm,% [0mm] -> no binding for electronic version
660   hyperref={bookmarksdepth=1,bookmarksopen,bookmarksopenlevel=0,%
661     citecolor=colorforcite,linkcolor=colorforlink,urlcolor=colorforurl},%
662   geometry={text={175truemm,226truemm},% A4 & letter
663     inner=0.0in,top=29.15mm,bottom=24.5mm,footskip=9.68mm,voffset=-5mm},%letter
664 ]{confproc}
665 </exclasslastel>

```

6.2 Option management: examples of option combinations

6.2.1 Fasten compilation steps

As the L^AT_EX run may be long when only making a small change, we may want to speed up the process by using the **papers=draft** or even better with **papers=empty** (see sec. 4.2.3). This is useful for instance when making layout changes, editing the welcome letters, or working on generating proper page numbering. This will replace each PDF page by an almost blank page. The difference between the two is that **papers=draft** uses the draft mode of pdfpages, whereas the **papers=empty** options uses an internal command, and displays more information about each .pdf file: paper title, author list, file name, tags of bibliography items, and page number. Note that both preserve the bookmark, and **empty** is much faster than **draft**, which is already way faster than **last**.

final The other possible compilation option is **final**. Note that it is configured by default depending on the **compil** option you used, but can be modified anyway.

6.2.2 Verbose/debug

verbose debug Also, the **verbose** or **debug** option adds some debug comments in the L^AT_EX console, both from confproc and hyperref packages, that might help to track problems if any. It can be used at any compilation step, of course!

6.2.3 Clear single/double page

Depending on whether your document is **oneside** or **twoside**, you may want to force it to always:

- `cleardoublepage` • clear double page after each paper in 1-side mode using `cleardoublepage` (used with `oneside`);
- `clearsinglepage` • not clear double page after each paper in 2-side mode using `clearsinglepage` (used with `twoside`).

6.3 Steps to generate the final version of the proceedings

Now that all options and commands to build proceedings are known, we need more insight about what to do with which option/command and when. This is the purpose of this section, that proposed some building stages (as depicted in the diagram in Fig. 1) to produce both the electronic and paperback final versions of the provided example proceedings with the following constraints:

- the template for papers has a header and footer, so the proceedings must have the same header/footer;
- a general bibliography is used;
- the final PDF papers must be named after their first page number.

6.3.1 Generate the program and the paper switch

Once the general proceedings structure is there (see the `example3optim.tex` file), the first step is to generate the conference program and its corresponding paper switch:

- by hand (read sec. 5.2 for an example);
- using the `generateswitch.pl` Perl script described in sec. 7.4 to generate both the `exsessions.tex` and `expapersswitch.tex` files from your `exprogram.csv` program file.

6.3.2 Make sure each PDF is fully inserted

At some point, we want to make sure all pages of each paper are inserted. The simplest way is to always use the `papers=countpages`, but this is unfortunately very time consuming when working on setting various layout aspects, the program, and also when adding contents to the preamble. Therefore, if using `papers=empty` for instance, we want to make sure no paper has been truncated by error. Checking this by hand is a long and fastidious task, so two solutions are offered: the `countnbpages.sh` script (see sec. 7.7) and the `*.nps` files generated when running \LaTeX with either `papers=countpages` or `papers=empty`.

For Unix users:

1. launch once the `countnbpages.sh` script (see sec. 7.7) to generate `example.npc`, which contains each paper's real number of pages;
- `papers=empty` 2. run `pdflatex` onto `example.tex` with `papers=empty` (faster mode to emulate paper insertion with your settings such as the number of pages); it generates a `example.nps` file with the user-defined number of pages;
3. compare the content of both files, using


```
diff example.nps example.npc
```
4. each paper appearing in the `diff` command output has a page number discrepancy, that has to be corrected.

Once all discrepancies have been corrected, re-do this procedure once for a last check, just in case!

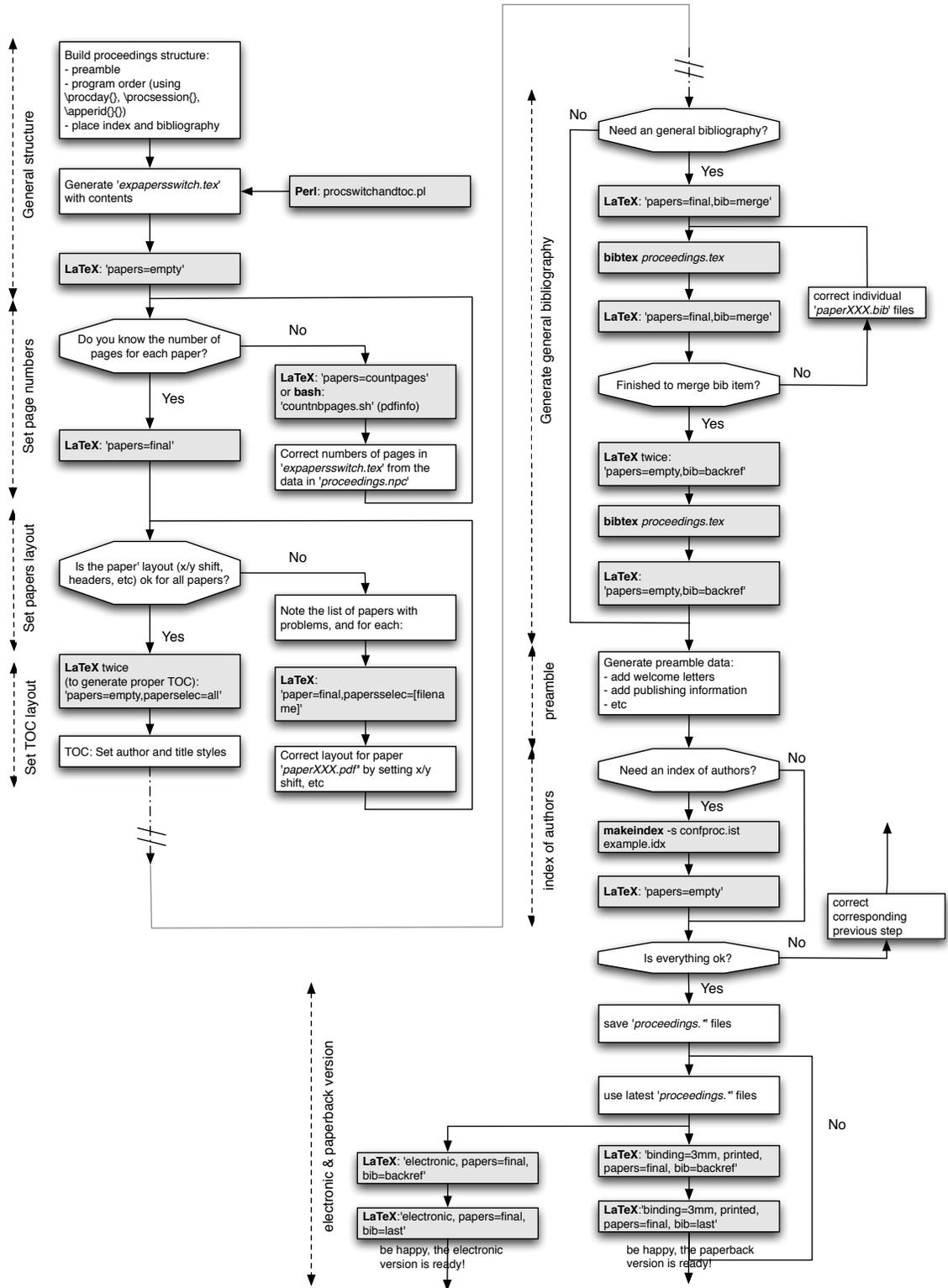


Figure 1: Suggested stages to build proceedings

For non-Unix users (sorry, it's much slower!):

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| papers=countpages | 1. run pdflatex onto <code>example3optim.tex</code> with <code>papers=countpages</code> (real full paper insertion); it generates <code>example.npc</code> (real number of pages); |
| papers=empty | 2. run pdflatex onto <code>example3optim.tex</code> with <code>papers=empty</code> (faster mode to emulate paper insertion with your selected number of pages); it generates <code>example.nps</code> (supposed number of pages); |
| | 3. compare both files (with your favorite text editor's 'compare file' function). |

If some page numbers indicated in `expapersswitch.tex` are not identical to the real page number, we just edit the file to correct the error, and can now go on with building the proceedings.

6.3.3 Changing papers' first page number

When the paper template includes the page number in the footer, we need to correct each individual paper's first page number as it appears in the proceedings' table of contents²². To do so:

1. make at least two runs with the following options:

```
\documentclass[a4paper,10pt,twoside,twosidepapers,%  
  compil=last,headers=allpages,movpagenumber,electronic]{confproc}
```

to include all papers and build a table of contents with proper page numbers.

2. prepare each paper for insertion. There are two ways to do this:

- (a) lazy way: use the `\setcounter{page}{XXX}` command in each paper, with XXX replaced by the real number;
- (b) alternative way (simplifies program changes): centralize page numbers in the `expages.tex` file, organized by the paper ID. Then, the two steps are:
 - add the following in the preamble of each paper:

```
\input{.././expages.tex}\setpagenumber{04}
```

Here, the ID paper is 04, and has to be updated for each paper.
 - update the `expages.tex` file for each paper: set its first page number as it appears in the table of contents.

By doing so, we can update the program to re-build the table of contents as many times as wanted, without having to re-edit each paper.

3. once the program and the corresponding paper order are ok, (re)generate each paper independently with proper first page number (using the `buildpapers.sh` script in sec. 7.12);
4. check that no error was made when numbering the first page. Run \LaTeX with at least the `headers=allpages,movpagenumber` options. In case of error, re-do step 2–3 till the page numbers are ok.

6.3.4 Renaming papers

Renaming all papers according to their first page number (e.g. `p_NNN.pdf` if only PDF files are renamed) is very helpful to ensure the proceedings' CD version is ISO compliant, and has file names with less than 8 characters (+ extensions). This can only be done once the program is definitive. Then file names can be changed accordingly in the `.csv` file; the `expapersswitch.tex` file has to be re-generated, and the proceedings rebuilt. It is easily done using the Unix scripts.

²²When clicking on a paper, the PDF file of this paper will open with the same first page number. Also, if the conference papers are available on the web, knowing the proper page numbers will help readers to properly cite them.

6.4 Quality and production

We present here some other ideas dealing with the production and the quality of the proceedings. Indeed, to provide the best possible quality proceedings, individual papers may be edited (see sec. 6.4.1), which can be simplified by sending notes to authors before they submit the final version (see sec. 6.4.2). Using only \LaTeX to typeset may require to convert some Word files to \LaTeX , in the case where the proceedings templates are provided in the 2 formats to authors (see sec. 6.4.3). The last comments are about the graphical quality (sec. 6.4.4) and the necessary font embedding in the PDF images (see sec. 6.4.5).

6.4.1 Editing the papers

To provide the best possible quality proceedings for DAFx-06, each individual paper was edited by checking the following items (non-exhaustive list):

- proper page format used (US letter instead of A4 format), as the authors were from various continents around the worlds;
- break the title line at the right place using `\break`;
- affiliation type is properly indicated;
- affiliation is properly layed out;
- author’s email exists and works;
- captions are italic, with a “.” at the end;
- all figures are referenced in the text;
- bibliographic items have a volume and number, as well as page number or preprint number (AES convention);
- bibliographic items use generally defined strings, and are identical each time they are cited;
- math units: Physics convention is roman, not italic (*i.e.* not \LaTeX ’s math style). Ex: 5 Hz, and not $5Hz$.

So as to ensure papers look uniform as possible, we changed for each:

- the URL font to sans-serif, as its default font is too wide. We added the following command in the preamble of each paper:
`\usepackage{url}\urlstyle{sf}`
- all `\href{}{}` commands related to URL (*i.e.* all except emails) where converted to URL, as it is more appropriated (it does the hyphenations for you and most of the time it does it better).

Some not-so-minor comments:

- to do a valid line break in the paper title (at least with the `dafx06.sty` style, but not only) use `\break`, instead of `\newline`, `\`, or `\linebreak` (that creates unbalanced titles). That way, it works similarly for both the title and the `pdftitle` in the metadata.
- using the `balance.sty` package allows to well balance the last page, which is especially useful for the bibliography.

6.4.2 Sending editing notes to authors to improve the layout quality

In order to improve aspects of the quality of the proceedings, we listed many common errors and gave a feedback to authors of all accepted papers, that they were kindly asked to take care of. This is how we proceeded:

1. examine all papers and list the common errors and electronic paper info (PDF version, PDF generator, valid hyperref, etc.) (10h);
2. in an `.csv` file, indicate all problems, paper's title, index and author's email (0.5h);
3. column by column, fill in the data (30h) with errors detected in each paper;
4. use a combination of Perl script and an AppleScript to convert info in this file into usual sentences and indications of what to do in order to improve the paper quality (4h), and then into a series of emails, ready to be sent to authors (4h).

N.B.: Those scripts are not provided in the package, but can be obtained on demand.

6.4.3 Manual Word to \LaTeX conversion

To automatize all the processes in proceedings making, we may want to convert all non- \LaTeX generated documents into \LaTeX documents. If that cannot be asked to the conference authors, we need to do it ourselves. Here is an example of the steps to follow:

1. copy and paste the whole text;
2. update the header (author, title, affiliation);
3. add sections, subsections, etc. according to the original text; update labels and references for sections, subsections, etc.;
4. insert figures and tables with the proceedings template style; update labels and references for figures and tables;
5. update captions with the proceedings template style;
6. edit equations (inside the text and as separated formulae); update labels and references for equations ;
7. replace all Word quotes by \LaTeX quotes (double “”, and single ‘ ’ quotes) to avoid they disappear (Unicode-related issue);
8. correct any specific formatting such as italic, capitals, bold, etc;
9. remove useless hyphenations “-” produced as line breaks by Word;
10. replace remaining hyphens by the proper corresponding one: dash ‘-’ (hyphen), semi-quadratin ‘-’ (ex: number range) and quadratin ‘—’.

6.4.4 How to ensure the graphical quality?

The best way to ensure excellent quality for you graphics in the electronic version of you proceedings consists in using vectorial images, *i.e.* postscript (`.ps` or `.eps`) or `.pdf` files. It should be the same for the printed version, except that the font problem with Matlab described in sec. 6.4.5 may imply to convert vectorial images to bitmap images (such as `.png` or `.gif`).

6.4.5 How to ensure your fonts are embedded in the PDF?

Various important things have to be checked to ensure a great PDF file quality. (Please read www.prepressure.com/pdf/basics/preflight for more information). One of these important things is the font embedding. If not checked, you may end up with a document where fonts will disappear and be replaced by random characters (which are not random in fact)²³. Unfortunately for non-experts user of Matlab, the system fonts such as Arial or Helvetica are not embedded by default in the .pdf nor in the .eps file. This can be checked by converting any of the two into another format using Ghostscript. For instance, converting a .pdf to .ps using pdf2ps will show the following log info:

```
**** Warning: Fonts with Subtype = /TrueType should be embedded.
       The following fonts were not embedded:
           Arial-ItalicMT
           ArialMT

**** This file had errors that were repaired or ignored.
**** The file was produced by:
**** >>>> pdfTeX-0.14h <<<<
**** Please notify the author of the software that produced this
**** file that it does not conform to Adobe's published PDF
**** specification.
```

This can also be checked by processing a PDF files produced by Matlab using Acrobat Distiller (\$), and you will get the same errors...

A way to correct this in Matlab is use the `print_pdf.m`²⁴ file by Oliver Woodford to save the figure as PDF with embedded fonts.

If you cannot have it fixed by the author, then you need to use Acrobat Professional to do the job for you. Utilities like `pdfinfo` and `pdffonts` are helpful to detect such problems as well as missing bounding boxes, with commands like:

```
pdffonts [filename.pdf]
pdfinfo -box [filename.pdf]
```

7 Various scripts and utilities to save time

7.1 `buildcls.sh`: Build the class documentation and files

Name `buildcls.sh`

Type Unix/bash script

Purpose generates the class files and documentation, and prepares the example-related files.

Note first set the path to $\text{\LaTeX} 2_{\epsilon}$ binaries before using it!

```
666 (*buildcls)
667 #!/bin/sh
668
669 wd=`pwd`
670
```

²³Indeed, when printing on a system that is not yours (*e.g.* in a professional print center), the printer may be set such as not to replace a missing font by a similar one. This is why, Matlab text can be totally scrapped, replaced by other numbers, letters, and so on!

²⁴get it at: www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral/fileexchange/22018-printpdf

First, you may set the path to L^AT_EX 2_ε binaries:

```
671 #-- set path to LaTeX binaries
672 LaPath="/usr/texbin/" # TeXLive
673
```

and then, only if necessary, change the names to the L^AT_EX compilers:

```
674 #-- set names of LaTeX and related compilers
675 Latex=$LaPath"pdflatex"
676 Index=$LaPath"makeindex"
```

as well as the document and example target names:

```
677 Target="confproc" #- set document's name
678 extarget="example/" #- set the example folder name
679
```

We can start building the documentation and the .ins file:

```
680 #-- build doc, class and example files
681 $Latex $Target.dtx #- build doc. and .ins file
682 $Latex $Target.ins #- build class and example files
683
```

We then rename the bibliography style (HACK: the file is generated under the newapave2.sty, because if there already exist a newapave.sty on your system, it will not be generated again under that name; we now have to properly rename it):

```
684 #-- HACK: rename newapave2.sty
685 mv newapave2.sty newapave.sty
686
```

Once it is done, we can finish the documentation. this full sequence is only necessary if you generate the implementation, index and changes history:

```
687 cd $wd/
688 #-- finish to build the documentation
689 $Latex $Target.dtx #- re-run doc for toc update
690 $Latex $Target.dtx #- re-run doc for proper back-references
691 $Index -s gind.ist $Target #- with \CodelineIndex of \PageIndex
692 $Index -s gglo.ist -o $Target.gls $Target.glo #- with \RecordChanges
693 $Latex $Target.dtx #- insert index & list of changes, re-number
694 $Latex $Target.dtx #- last run with proper page numbers
695
```

Since there are 2 scripts, one to install (this one) and one to clean up all the mess (mainly used by me during building tests), we also prepare the latter:

```
696 #-- prepare scripts for cleaning package
697 cd $wd
698 chmod +x cleancls.sh
699
```

We then create the example folder and move all related files thanks to the prepareexample.sh script (sec. 7.3):

```
700 #-- prepare scripts for building example
701 chmod +x prepareexample.sh
702 ./prepareexample.sh
703
```

By uncommenting the last line, you will also build the example!

```
704 #-- build example
705 cd $extarget
706 #./buildproc.sh
707 </buildcls>
```

This script is generated by the first \LaTeX run on `confproc.dtx`. You then have to change its permission in the bash shell to make it executable:

```
chmod +x buildcls
```

Then, you can run it from the bash shell:

```
./buildcls
```

7.2 `cleancls.sh`: Clean up the class folder

Name `cleancls.sh`

Type Unix/bash script

Purpose cleans up the folder where the class was generated.

```
708 (*cleancls)
709 #!/bin/sh
710
```

Create a back up folder:

```
711 mkdir backup #--- move the files to be kept
```

Move original class documentation materials:

```
712 mv confproc.dtx backup/
713 mv confproc_diag.pdf backup/
714 mv confproc-short.tex backup/
715 mv confproc-short.pdf backup/
```

Move building and cleaning scripts:

```
716 mv buildcls.sh backup/
717 cp cleancls.sh backup/
```

Cleanup and place back the original minimal file set:

```
718 rm *.* #--- clean up!
719 mv backup/* . #--- move the backed up files
720 rm -r backup #--- remove the temporary backup folder
721 \</cleancls)
```

You may want to use it to re-generate the whole package from the `.dtx` file. Note that this script too is generated by the first \LaTeX run on the `confproc.dtx` file.

7.3 `prepareexample.sh`: Prepare the example files, scripts and folders

Name `prepareexample.sh`

Type Unix/bash script

Purpose prepares the example-related files, scripts and folders

Note first set the path to $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ binaries before using it!

```
722 % \changes{0.7}{2010/08/05}{added \file{prepareexample.sh}}
723 (*prepareexample)
724 #!/bin/sh
725
726 wd=$(pwd)
727
```

Set the example folder name:

```
728 extarget="example" #- set the example folder name
729
```

Then create the example folder:

```
730 #-- prepare scripts for building example
731 mkdir $extarget #- create the folder
732
733 #-- generate the program session files
734 perl generateswitch.pl<exprogram.csv
735
```

and move the example-related files and scripts:

```
736 mv ex*. * $extarget/ #- move all other example files into proper folder
737 mv buildproc* $extarget/ #- move scripts into it
738 mv buildcppdfpapers* $extarget/
739 mv buildpapers* $extarget/
740 mv countnbpages.sh $extarget/
741 mv generateswitch.pl $extarget/
742 mv papersinfo.sh $extarget/
743 mv paperssplitpreamble.sh $extarget/
744 mv removeLaTeXcmds.sh $extarget/
745
```

Also, copy folder and files that are common to the class documentation and the example:

```
746 cp -r pictures $extarget/ #- copy pictures into it
747 cp -r papers $extarget/ #- copy papers into it
748 cp confproc.cls $extarget/ #- copy the class into it
749 cp confproc*.ist $extarget/ #- copy the index style into it
750 cp newapave* $extarget/ #- copy the newapave bib style files
751
```

Move the expages.tex generated file to the right place, and prepare the pdftk information folder:

```
752 #-- prepare building scripts and generate needed directories
753 cd $wd/$extarget
754 mkdir pdftk_info/
755 mv expages.tex papers/
756
```

Change the permission of the example-related scripts:

```
757 cd $wd/$extarget
758 chmod +x buildproc*
759 chmod +x generateswitch.pl
760 chmod +x exportIndividualPDFs.sh
761 chmod +x papersinfo.sh
762 chmod +x paperssplitpreamble.sh
763 cd ..
764
```

By uncommenting the last line, we also build the example!

```
765 #-- build example
766 cd $wd/$extarget
767 #./buildproc.sh
768 </prepareexample>
```

N.B.: This script is generated by the first L^AT_EX run on confproc.dtx. You then have to change its permission in the bash shell to make it executable:

```
chmod +x prepareexample.sh # change its permissions
```

Then, you can run it from the bash shell:

```
./prepareexample.sh
```

7.4 generateswitch.pl: Generate the paper switch and program [Perl]

Name generateswitch.pl

Type Perl script

Purpose generates TOC-related example files: paper switch in expapersswitch.tex and papers order by sessions and days in exsessions.tex.

to use it, type in a bash terminal: perl generateswitch.pl<exprogram.csv (or any other program file).

```
769 (*generateswitch)
770 #!/usr/bin/perl -w
771
772 # generateswitch.pl
773 #   created as dafxproctoc.pl by Marc Zadel, 2006-04-28
774 #   modified for confproc.cls by Vincent Verfaillie, 2007-08-08 (v0.4) & 2009-10-30 (v0.7)
775 # Execute as
776 # ./generateswitch.pl < inputfile.txt >
777
778 use strict;
779 use Text::ParseWords;
780 open(SWI, ">expapersswitch.tex"); #open for write, overwrite
781 open(SESSIONS, ">exsessions.tex"); #open for write, overwrite
782
783 # ----- Configuration
784 # field separator for the input file
785 my $fieldseparator=',';
786
787 # mac line endings: "\r" / Unix line endings: "\n"
788 $/ = "\n"; # line endings for the input file
789 $\ = "\n"; # line endings for the output file
790
791 # ----- Subroutines
792 # -- split one line of input into a hash with named fields
793 sub parseinputline {
794   my ($inputline) = @_;
795
796   # escape single quotes on the input line: they interfere with quotewords()'s
797   # quote handling (ie, they start to quote stuff)
798   $inputline =~ s/'/\\"/g;
799
800   # parse the input line
801   my @wordlist = &quotewords($fieldseparator, 0, $inputline);
802
803   # replace accented characters with latex escaped equivalents. Use it after
804   # quotewords() so the '\' don't get interpreted by quotewords() as escapes
805   foreach my $word ( @wordlist ) {
806     if ( $word ) { $word = &latexifyaccentedcharacters($word); }
807   }
808
809   # extract the fields into local variables. Author names stored as a list
```

```

810 my ($type, $number, $pcdecision, $nbpages, $title, $filename,
811     $generatedfrom, $cite) = @wordlist;
812
813 # remove the first 8 elements (just parsed out), leaving only author names.
814 # reminder: list of 8 scalars, though some may be "" if less than 4 authors
815 splice( @wordlist, 0, 8 );
816
817 # store the author names as a list of lists. We end up with a list that looks
818 # like ((Udo,Zoelzer),(Daniel,Arfib))
819 my @authors = ();
820 while ( $wordlist[0] ) {
821     push( @authors, [splice( @wordlist, 0, 2 )] );
822     # "splice( @wordlist, 0, 2 )": cuts the first 2 scalars off of @wordlist
823     # and returns them; calling [splice(@wordlist,0,2)] returns a *reference*
824     # to a list containing the first two scalars. (see perldoc perldsc.)
825 }
826
827 # create a hash reference containing the named fields and return it
828 my $fields = {
829     type      => $type,
830     number    => $number,
831     pcdecision => $pcdecision,
832     nbpages   => $nbpages,
833     title     => $title,
834     generatedfrom => $generatedfrom,
835     filename  => $filename,
836     cite      => $cite,
837     authors   => \@authors,
838 };
839 return $fields;
840 }
841
842 # -- takes a string in Mac OS Roman encoding and encode the accented
843 # characters with latex escapes (only for a subset of available characters).
844 sub latexifyaccentedcharacters {
845     # for mapping between unicode and mac os western encoding, see:
846     # http://www.unicode.org/Public/MAPPINGS/VENDORS/APPLE/ROMAN.TXT
847     my ($inputstring) = @_ ;
848     $inputstring =~ s/\x8a/\`a/g; # `a: unicode 0xe4, mac os western 0x8a
849     $inputstring =~ s/\x87/\`a/g; # `a: unicode 0xe9, mac os western 0x87
850     $inputstring =~ s/\x88/\`a/g; # `a: unicode 0xe8, mac os western 0x88
851     $inputstring =~ s/\x8e/\`e/g; # `e: unicode 0xe9, mac os western 0x8e
852     $inputstring =~ s/\x8f/\`e/g; # `e: unicode 0xe8, mac os western 0x8f
853     $inputstring =~ s/\x91/\`e/g; # `e: unicode 0xeb, mac os western 0x91
854     $inputstring =~ s/\x97/\`o/g; # `o: unicode 0xf3, mac os western 0x97
855     $inputstring =~ s/\x98/\`o/g; # `o: unicode 0xf2, mac os western 0x98
856     $inputstring =~ s/\x9a/\`o/g; # `o: unicode 0xf6, mac os western 0x9a
857     $inputstring =~ s/\x99/\`o/g; # `o: unicode 0xf4, mac os western 0x99
858     $inputstring =~ s/\xbf/\`o /g; # `o: unicode 0xf8, mac os western 0xbf
859     $inputstring =~ s/\x96/\`n/g; # `n: unicode 0xf1, mac os western 0x96
860     $inputstring =~ s/\x94/\`{i}/g; # `{i}: unicode 0xee, mac os western 0x94
861     $inputstring =~ s/\x/\`i/g; # `i: unicode , mac os western
862     $inputstring =~ s/\x9f/\`u/g; # `u: unicode 0xfc, mac os western 0x9f
863     $inputstring =~ s/\x5c/\` /g; # ` : unicode 0x5C, mac os western 0x5C
864
865     return $inputstring;

```

```

866 }
867
868 # -- output the information for a day
869 sub outputdaylatex {
870     my ($fields) = @_;
871     my $sessiontitle = $fields->{'title'};
872     open(SESSIONS, ">>exsessions.tex"); #open for append
873     print SESSIONS ' ';
874     print SESSIONS '%%%= Day';
875     print SESSIONS '\procdays{', $sessiontitle, '}'
876 }
877
878 # -- output the information for a session line
879 sub outputsessionlatex {
880     my ($fields) = @_;
881     my $sessiontitle = $fields->{'title'};
882     open(SESSIONS, ">>exsessions.tex"); #open for append
883     print SESSIONS ' ';
884     print SESSIONS '%%-- session';
885     print SESSIONS '\session{', $sessiontitle, '}'
886 }
887
888 # -- in: ref. to a list of lists of author names ((Udo,Zoelzer),(Daniel,Arfib))
889 # out: ref. to a Perl list w/ entries "Udo Zoelzer" and "Daniel Arfib" (no quotes)
890 sub authorsbyfirstname {
891     my ($authors) = @_;
892     # generate a list of full "first last" author names
893     my @authorlistbyfirstname = map { "$_->[0] $_->[1]" } @$authors;
894     return \@authorlistbyfirstname; # return a ref. to the new list of authors
895 }
896
897 # -- in: ref. to a list of lists of author names ((Udo,Zoelzer),(Daniel,Arfib))
898 # out: ref. to a Perl list w/ entries "Zoelzer, Udo" and "Arfib, Daniel"
899 sub authorsbysurname {
900     my ($authors) = @_;
901     # generate a list of authors with surnames written first
902     my @authorlistbysurname = map { "$_->[1], $_->[0]" } @$authors;
903     return \@authorlistbysurname; # return a ref. to the new list of authors
904 }
905
906 # -- in: ref. to a list of author names: "Zoelzer, Udo" and "Arfib, Daniel"
907 # out: LaTeX index entries: "\index{Zoelzer, Udo}\index{Arfib, Daniel}"
908 sub genindex {
909     my ($authorsbysurname) = @_;
910     my @indexentries = map { "\\index{$_}" } @$authorsbysurname;
911     return join('', @indexentries);
912 }
913
914 # -- in: ref. to a list of author names: "Zoelzer, Udo" and "Arfib, Daniel"
915 # out: bookmarks cmds: "\pdfbookmark[2]{Udo Zoelzer}{#2.Udo Zoelzer}"
916 # \pdfbookmark[2]{Daniel Arfib}{#2.Daniel Arfib}"
917 sub genbookmark {
918     my ($authorsbyfirstname) = @_;
919     my @indexentries = map { "\\pdfbookmark[2]{$_}{#2.$_}" }
920         @$authorsbyfirstname;
921     return join('', @indexentries);

```

```

922 }
923
924 # -- output the information for a paper line
925 sub outputpaperlatex {
926   my ($fields) = @_;
927   open(SWI, ">>expapersswitch.tex"); #open for append
928   print SWI '%===== PAPER ID = ', $fields->{'number'}, ' =====';
929   print SWI '\ifnum\paperswitch=', $fields->{'number'};
930   print SWI ' \procpaper[xshift=\LaTeXxShift{}, yshift=\LaTeXyShift{}, npages=',
931     $fields->{'npages'}, ', switch=\paperswitch,%';
932   print SWI ' title={', $fields->{'title'}, '},% paper title';
933   print SWI ' author={', join( ', ', @{$authorsbyfirstname($fields->{'authors'})}),
934     '},% list of authors';
935   print SWI ' index={', &genindex(&authorsbysurname($fields->{'authors'})),
936     '},% authors index entries';
937   print SWI ' cite={', $fields->{'cite'}, '},% cited bib items';
938 # print SWI ' {#2}\paperbookmark';
939   print SWI ' bookmark={', &genbookmark(&authorsbyfirstname($fields->{'authors'})), '},% for P
940   print SWI ' ]{#2}';
941   print SWI '\fi';
942   print SWI ' ';
943   open(SESSIONS, ">>exsessions.tex"); #open for write, overwrite
944   print SESSIONS '\paperid{', $fields->{'number'}, '}{', $fields->{'filename'}, '}';
945 }
946
947 # ----- Main
948 # FIXME: parse a line, and confirm that all of the fields are set up properly
949 # --> correct number of fields, and the fields have the correct values
950 open(SWI, ">>expapersswitch.tex"); #open for write, overwrite
951 print SWI '\newcommand{\paperid}[2]{';
952 print SWI ' ';
953 print SWI '\renewcommand{\paperswitch}{#1}';
954 print SWI ' ';
955
956 while ( <> ) {
957   chomp; # clear the newline character from the end of the line
958   my $fields = &parseinputline($_); # parse the line into fields
959   # take some action depending on what type of line it is; case insensitive
960   if ( lc($fields->{'type'}) eq lc('day') ) {
961     &outputdaylatex($fields);
962   } elsif ( lc($fields->{'type'}) eq lc('session')
963     || lc($fields->{'type'}) eq lc('paper session')
964     || lc($fields->{'type'}) eq lc('demo session')
965     || lc($fields->{'type'}) eq lc('poster session') ) {
966     &outputsessionlatex($fields);
967   } elsif ( lc($fields->{'type'}) eq lc('oral')
968     || lc($fields->{'type'}) eq lc('paper')
969     || lc($fields->{'type'}) eq lc('demo')
970     || lc($fields->{'type'}) eq lc('poster') ) {
971     &outputpaperlatex($fields);
972   } elsif ( lc($fields->{'type'}) eq lc('Type')) {
973   } else { print '!!! a day, session or paper (',
974     $fields->{'type'},') is lost by the script...';
975   }
976   open(SWI, ">>expapersswitch.tex"); #open for append
977 }

```

```

978 print SWI '}'';
979 close(SWI);
980 close(SESSIONS);
981 </generateswitch>

```

7.5 buildproc.sh: Build the proceedings

Name buildproc.sh

Type Unix/bash script

Purpose describes all compilation steps to produce the final version of the proceedings

Note This script is the most important!

This script applies several \LaTeX runs to create valid table of content, index, bibliography, index of authors, and proper back references from the bibliography. It also manages the renaming of the class insertion file, so we do not need anymore to run a last time by hand after changing the `compil=backref` option to `compil=last` (as this option change, and others, are in the `exclasspre.tex` and `exclasslast.tex` files).

```

982 <*buildproc>
983 #!/bin/sh
984

```

We set the user-dependent the original file name (no extension):

```

985 #--- set user dependent file name
986 TEXTFILE="example3optim"

```

Let us now set system-dependent variables: the path the the \LaTeX distribution as well as the binaries:

```

987 #--- set system-dependent variables
988 LATEXPATH="/usr/texbin/" # for TexLive
989 #--- set compilers' paths
990 PDFLATEX=$LATEXPATH"pdflatex"
991 BIBTEX=$LATEXPATH"bibtex"
992 MAKEINDEX=$LATEXPATH"makeindex"
993 mkdir pdftk_info/
994

```

- we copy the class options (including `bib=backref`) to the file called by the core file:

```

995 #--- class settings: "empty" option and binding
996 cp exclasspre.tex exclass.tex

```

- we run \LaTeX once to generate the table of contents:

```

997 #--- Compile
998 separator='-----',
999 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1000 echo '*** PdfLaTeX: create toc (1/6) ***'
1001 $PDFLATEX $TEXTFILE.tex
1002

```

- we run $\text{bib}\TeX$ once to generate the bibliography:

```

1003 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1004 echo '*** Bibtex: generate the general biblio. (2/6) ***'
1005 $BIBTEX $TEXTFILE
1006

```

- we run `makeindex` once to generate the author index:

```
1007 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1008 echo '*** Makeindex: create index of authors (3/6) ***'
1009 $MAKEINDEX -s confproc2.ist $TEXFILE.idx
1010
```

- we run `LATEX` once to insert the table of contents, index and bibliography, and update their page numbers for next run:

```
1011 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1012 echo '*** PdfLaTeX: add toc + insert index and bibliography (4/6) ***'
1013 $PDFLATEX $TEXFILE.tex
1014
```

- we run `LATEX` once again to insert update page numbers in the table of contents, index and bibliography:

```
1015 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1016 echo '*** PdfLaTeX: createupdate toc, index and bib page numbers (5/6) ***'
1017 $PDFLATEX $TEXFILE.tex
1018
```

- we do the final `LATEX` run:

```
1019 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1020 echo '*** PdfLaTeX: mod. class insertion, for proper PDF links for full papers (6/6) ***'
1021 $PDFLATEX $TEXFILE.tex
1022 </buildproc>
```

7.6 `buildprocelpb.sh`: Generate both paperback and electronic final versions

Name `buildprocelpb.sh`

Type Unix/bash script

Purpose describes all compilation steps to produce the final version of both paperback and electronic proceedings

Note This script helps to automatize the whole production process; its is described/commented as an incrementation from `buildproc.sh`.

We first set the user-dependent file names and folders, namely:

```
1023 % \changes{0.7}{2010/08/05}{added \file{buildprocelpb.sh}}
1024 % \color{black!50}
1025 <*buildprocelpb>
1026 #!/bin/bash
1027
1028 #--- set user dependent file name
```

- the original file name (no extension):

```
1029 INTEXFILE="example4optim"
```

- the target file name (no extension):

```
1030 TEXFILE="proceedings"
```

- the working directory:

```
1031 TEXFILEPATH="example"
```

- the target directories for paperback and electronic versions:

```
1032 PAPERBACKFOLDER="PDF_printed/"
```

```
1033 ELECTRONICFOLDER="PDF_electronic/"
```

```
1034
```

We then define the names of L^AT_EX files containing the class options before the last run (ie. with bibliography back-references):

```
1035 #--- different class options for electronic vs paperback version
```

```
1036 class_paperback_pre=exclasspre
```

and the names of L^AT_EX files containing the class options for the last run for both paperback and electronic versions:

```
1037 class_paperback_final=exclasslastpb
```

```
1038 class_electronic_final=exclasslastel
```

```
1039
```

Let us now set system-dependent variables: the path the the L^AT_EX distribution as well as the binaries:

```
1040 #--- set system-dependent variables
```

```
1041 LATEXPATH="/usr/texbin/" # TexLive
```

```
1042
```

```
1043 #--- set compilers' paths
```

```
1044 PDFLATEX=$LATEXPATH"pdflatex"
```

```
1045 BIBTEX=$LATEXPATH"bibtex"
```

```
1046 MAKEINDEX=$LATEXPATH"makeindex"
```

```
1047
```

We then define temporary folders for splitting the proceedings back into separate files with proper PDF metadata:

```
1048 #--- set script-specific paths
```

```
1049 GPATH='pwd' # general proc path
```

```
1050 PAPERBACKFOLDER=${GPATH}/${PAPERBACKFOLDER}
```

```
1051 ELECTRONICFOLDER=${GPATH}/${ELECTRONICFOLDER}
```

```
1052 PDFPATH="${ELECTRONICFOLDER}/papers"
```

```
1053 PDFTKPATH="pdftk_info/"
```

```
1054 INPATH="tmp/papersinfo/"
```

```
1055 SPPATH="tmp/papers_split/"
```

```
1056
```

Let us now create the needed folders:

```
1057 #=== prepare output folders
```

```
1058 mkdir -p ${PAPERBACKFOLDER}
```

```
1059 mkdir -p ${ELECTRONICFOLDER}
```

```
1060 rm -r ${ELECTRONICFOLDER}/papers/
```

```
1061 mkdir -p ${ELECTRONICFOLDER}/papers/
```

```
1062 mkdir -p $INPATH
```

```
1063 mkdir -p $SPPATH
```

```
1064 mkdir -p $PDFTKPATH
```

```
1065
```

We can now move to the working directory and start building the paperback version:

```
1066 #=== GO TO LaTeX FOLDER !!!
```

```
1067 cd ${GPATH}
```

```
1068
```

- we generate the \LaTeX file by concatenating the class options (including `bib=backref`) with the file core:

```
1069 #=== MAKE PAPERBACK VERSION
1070 #--- class settings: "empty" option and binding
1071 cat ${class_paperback_pre}.tex ${INTEFILE}.tex >${TEFILE}.tex
1072
```

- we run \LaTeX once to generate the table of contents:

```
1073 #--- Compile
1074 separator='-----'
1075 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1076 echo '*** PdfLaTeX: create toc (1/6) ***'
1077 $PDFLATEX $TEFILE.tex
1078
```

- we run $\text{bib}\TeX$ once to generate the bibliography:

```
1079 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1080 echo '*** BibTeX: generate the general biblio. (2/6) ***'
1081 $BIBTEX $TEFILE
1082
```

- we run `makeindex` once to generate the author index:

```
1083 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1084 echo '*** Makeindex: create index of authors (3/6) ***'
1085 $MAKEINDEX -s confproc2.ist $TEFILE.idx
1086
```

- we run \LaTeX once to insert the table of contents, index and bibliography, and update their page numbers for next run:

```
1087 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1088 echo '*** PdfLaTeX: add toc + insert index and bibliography (4/6) ***'
1089 $PDFLATEX $TEFILE.tex
1090
```

- we run \LaTeX once again to insert update page numbers in the table of contents, index and bibliography:

```
1091 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1092 echo '*** PdfLaTeX: createupdate toc, index and bib page numbers (5/6) ***'
1093 $PDFLATEX $TEFILE.tex
1094
```

- we generate the final \LaTeX file by concatenating the class options (with `bib=final` being the only difference, otherwise you may break more than just the back-references and get a non-functioning table of content and index series of links) with the file core:

```
1095 #--- class settings: "final" option and binding
1096 cat ${class_paperback_final}.tex ${INTEFILE}.tex >${TEFILE}.tex
1097
```

- we do the final \LaTeX run:

```
1098 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1099 echo '*** PdfLaTeX: mod. class insertion, for proper PDF links for full papers (6/6) ***'
1100 $PDFLATEX $TEXFILE.tex
1101
```

- and save the file in the appropriate folder:

```
1102 #--- save PDF
1103 cp ${TEXFILE}.pdf $PAPERBACKFOLDER/${TEXFILE}.pdf
1104
```

The process is the exact same for the electronic version:

```
1105 #=== MAKE ELECTRONIC VERSION FOR CD, FROM PAPERBACK VERSION
1106 #--- class settings: "final" option and no binding
1107 cd ${GPATH}/${TEXFILEPATH}
1108 cat ${class_electronic_final}.tex ${INTEFILE}.tex >${TEXFILE}.tex
1109

1110 #--- Compile
1111 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1112 echo '*** PdfLaTeX: create toc (1/6) ***'
1113 $PDFLATEX $TEXFILE.tex
1114
1115 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1116 echo '*** Bibtex: generate the general biblio. (2/6) ***'
1117 $BIBTEX $TEXFILE
1118
1119 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1120 echo '*** Makeindex: create index of authors (3/6) ***'
1121 $MAKEINDEX -s confproc2.ist $TEXFILE.idx
1122
1123 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1124 echo '*** PdfLaTeX: add toc (4/6) ***'
1125 $PDFLATEX $TEXFILE.tex
1126
1127 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1128 echo '*** PdfLaTeX: create toc + include index (5/6) ***'
1129 $PDFLATEX $TEXFILE.tex
1130

1131 #--- class settings: "final" option and binding
1132 cat ${class_paperback_final}.tex ${INTEFILE}.tex >${TEXFILE}.tex
1133

1134 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1135 echo '*** PdfLaTeX: mod. class insertion, for proper PDF links for full papers (6/6) ***'
1136 $PDFLATEX $TEXFILE.tex
1137
```

Once the PDF file is generated, is ts saved: and

```
1138 mkdir ${ELECTRONICFOLDER}/papers/
1139 #--- save PDF
1140 echo "cmd: cp ${TEXFILE}.pdf ${GPATH}/${ELECTRONICFOLDER}/${TEXFILE}.pdf"
1141 cp ${TEXFILE}.pdf $ELECTRONICFOLDER/${TEXFILE}.pdf
1142
```

We can then generate individual PDFs with proper PDF metadata:

```
1143 #=== EXPORT individual pdf papers back from the proceedings + hdr/footers/metadata
1144 cd ${GPATH}
1145 echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo; echo $separator; echo $separator;
1146 echo '*** Export individual PDFs ***'
1147 echo "cmd: ./exportIndividualPDFs.sh ${GPATH} ${TEXFILEPATH}/${TEXFILE} ${INPATH} ${SPPATH} ${PDFPATH} ${PDFTKPATH}"
1148 ./exportIndividualPDFs.sh ${GPATH} ${TEXFILE} ${INPATH} ${SPPATH} ${PDFPATH} ${PDFTKPATH}
1149
```

and clean up the temporary folder if uncommented:

```
1150 # rm -r ${GPATH}/tmp/
1151 </buildprocelpb>
```

7.7 countnbpages.sh: Count the number of pages of individual PDFs

Name countnbpages.sh

Type Unix/bash script

Purpose counts each .pdf's number of pages, and stores them in a proceedings.npc file.

It is basically used to check that there is no discrepancy between the number of pages indicated in the proceedings file (proceedings.tex or expapersswitch.tex) and the actual number of pages of each paper.

```
1152 % \changes{0.7}{2010/08/05}{added \file{countnbpages.sh}}
1153 <*countnbpages>
1154 #!/bin/sh
1155
```

We first set the path to L^AT_EX binaries and names of L^AT_EX compiler:

```
1156 #-- set path to LaTeX binaries
1157 LATEXPATH="/usr/texbin/" # TeXLive
1158 #-- set names of LaTeX and related compilers
1159 PDFLATEX=$LATEXPATH"pdflatex"
1160
```

We then set the document name and papers' folder name:

```
1161 TEXFILE="simple_proceedings" #- set document's name
1162 PDFSPATH="papers" #- set the papers' folder name
1163
```

We remove previous .npt file:

```
1164 rm -f ${TEXFILE}.npt # count pages from terminal
1165 cd ${PDFSPATH}
```

For each .pdf file, we count its number of pages using the pdfinfo²⁵ script:

```
1166 for file in *.pdf
1167 do
1168   pdfinfo -meta $file | grep "Pages:" > tmp0
1169   echo "file $file has 'sed 's/.*\([0-9]\).*\1/' < tmp0' pages" >> ../${TEXFILE}.npt
1170 done
1171 rm -f tmp0
1172 cd ..
1173 more ${TEXFILE}.npt
1174 </countnbpages>
```

papers=countpages



Alternative Non-Unix aficionados can use the `papers=countpages` option (results are stored in `proceedings.npc`); this is however much much much slower, as `pdfpages` has to insert each and every page for each and every paper.

7.8 `exportIndividualPDFs.sh`: Export individual PDF papers from the proceedings

Name `exportIndividualPDFs.sh`

Type Unix/bash script

Purpose exports each individual paper from the whole proceedings, provided that a `proceedings.pdf` file exists

Dependencies `paperssplitpreamble.sh` and `papersinfo.sh`

Note It is only meant to be used once a valid PDF version of the electronic proceedings exist (ie. once all formatting issues have been solved and final content have been added), before creating a CD-ROM.

We first set macros from the script arguments (path, TeX file name without extension, paper info folder, split PDFs folder, PDF proceedings folder):

```
1175 % \changes{0.7}{2010/08/05}{added \file{exportIndividualPDFs.sh}}
1176 \exportIndividualPDFs
1177 #!/bin/bash
1178
1179 args=("$@")
1180 GPATH=${args[0]} #= ~/e-proceedings
1181 TEXFILE=${args[1]} #= proceedings
1182 INPATH=${args[2]} #= papers_info
1183 #mkdir -p $INPATH
1184 SPPATH=${args[3]} #= papers_split
1185 #mkdir -p $SPPATH
1186 PDFPATH=${args[4]}
1187 PDFTKPATH=${args[5]}
1188
1189 PDFFILE=${TEXFILE}.pdf # for use in the paper_split.sh and paper_info.sh scripts
1190
1191 echo "-PATH (working path): $GPATH"
1192 echo "-TeX file (orig. TeX proc): $TEXFILE"
1193 echo "-PDF: $PDFFILE (original PDF proc)"
1194 echo "-PDFPATH (indiv. PDFs): $PDFPATH"
1195 echo "-PDFTKPATH (pdftk info): $PDFTKPATH"
1196 echo "-INPATH (papers info): $INPATH"
1197 echo "-SPPATH (split papers): $SPPATH"
1198
```

we move to the PDFtk folder:

```
1199 cd $PDFTKPATH
1200 list='ls *.pdftk'
```

Then for each file:

```
1201 for tmpfile in $list
1202 do
```

²⁵`pdfinfo` can be downloaded from

we concatenate all lines by removing carriage returns:

```
1203 cp ${tmpfile} test.txt
1204 #-- 2-concat all lines, removing carriage returns
1205 sed -e :a -e '$!N;s/\n/LineBreak/;ta' -e 'P;D' test.txt >test2.txt
1206 perl -ne 's/LineBreakInfoKey/\nInfoKey/g; print ' test2.txt >test3.txt
1207 perl -ne 's/LineBreakInfoValue/\nInfoValue/g; print ' test3.txt >test4.txt
1208 perl -ne 's/LineBreak//g; print ' test4.txt >test5.txt
1209 mv test5.txt $tmpfile
1210 done
1211
```

After a quick clean up:

```
1212 rm -f tmp*
1213 rm -f test*.txt
1214
```

we generate the `papers_split.sh` bash script that will soon be used:

```
1215 cd $GPATH
1216 echo "-----"
1217 echo "__ split PDFs: generate bash script file"
1218 pwd
1219 echo "cmd: cat paperssplitpreamble.sh $TEXFILE.pdftk >tmp.sh"
1220 cat paperssplitpreamble.sh $TEXFILE.pdftk >tmp.sh
1221 mv tmp.sh ${GPATH}/papers_split.sh
1222
```

to which we add the Perl command that helps to add echo command to each `pdftk`²⁶ command in `papers_split.sh`:

```
1223 echo "-----"
1224 echo "__ split PDFs: Perl to add echo lines to 'papers_split.sh' script"
1225
1226 #echo "cmd: Perl to copy/add 'echo' cmd to each pdftk command, in 'papers_split.sh'"
1227 perl -p -e 's/~/pdftk(.*[\n\r])/echo \"pdftk $1\"/npdftk $1/gm' ${GPATH}/papers_split.sh >tmp.txt
1228 mv tmp.txt ${GPATH}/papers_split_all.sh
1229
```

We can now launch the `papers_split_all.sh` bash script:

```
1230 echo; echo "-----"
1231 echo "__ split PDFs: launch bash script file"
1232 #echo "cmd: chmod +x papers_split_all.sh"
1233 chmod +x papers_split_all.sh
1234
1235 echo "cmd: ./papers_split_all.sh"
1236 #echo "    ./papers_split_all.sh ${GPATH} ${TEXFILE} ${INPATH} ${SPPATH} ${PDFPATH}"
1237 ./papers_split_all.sh ${GPATH} ${TEXFILE} ${INPATH} ${SPPATH} ${PDFPATH}
1238 # rm ${SPPATH}/*.ps #useful only if 'pdf2ps -> ps2pdf', not useful with 'gs'
1239
1240
```

and once all individual PDFs have been split, we generate new individual PDFs with corrected and homogeneous metadata:

```
1241 #-- generate PDF with corrected metadata
1242 echo "-----"
1243 echo "__ Correct PDF metadata with papersinfo.sh"
1244 ./papersinfo.sh ${GPATH} ${TEXFILE} ${INPATH} ${SPPATH} ${PDFPATH} ${PDFTKPATH}
1245
```

²⁶Get `pdftk` at: <http://www.accesspdf.com/pdftk/>

we're now good for a real spring cleaning:

```
1246 ##--- clean
1247 #rm -r ${INPATH}
1248 #rm -r ${SPPATH}
1249 #rm papers_split.sh
1250 #rm -r tmp
1251 </exportIndividualPDFs>
```

7.9 removeLaTeXcmds.sh: Convert L^AT_EX strings for PDF metadata

Name removeLaTeXcmds.sh

Type Unix/bash script that makes use of Perl commands

Purpose converts L^AT_EX strings for PDF metadata

Note to be used when using the metadata in proceedings.pdf_{tk} (generated by the `pdftk` option), as we need to remove all L^AT_EX commands and accents that are not recognized by the PDF format.

We first get the script arguments (path, input file name, output file name):

```
1252 <*removeLaTeXcmds>
1253 #!/bin/bash
1254
1255 # arg 0: path, arg 1: input file; arg 2: output file
1256
1257 #-- save arguments for use
1258 args=("$@")
1259 path=${args[0]}
1260 file=${args[1]}
1261 outputfile=${args[2]}
```

We go to the folder where we want to work, and copy the input file in order to work on a copy:

```
1262 cd ${path}
1263 cp ${file} tmp.txt
1264 #echo "__ ORIGINAL: $file ___"
1265 #cat tmp.txt
1266
```

We then remove accents with Perl commands::

```
1267 #echo " "
1268 #echo "__ removed accents: __"
1269 perl -p -i -e " s/\\\'e/e/g " tmp.txt
1270 perl -p -i -e " s/\\\'{e}/e/g " tmp.txt
1271 perl -p -i -e " s/\\\'e/e/g " tmp.txt
1272 perl -p -i -e ' s/\\\'e/e/g ' tmp.txt
1273 perl -p -i -e " s/\\\'{e}/e/g " tmp.txt
1274 perl -p -i -e " s/\\\'a/a/g " tmp.txt
1275 perl -p -i -e " s/\\\'a/a/g " tmp.txt
1276 perl -p -i -e " s/\\\'{a}/a/g " tmp.txt
1277 perl -p -i -e ' s/\\\'{o}/oe/g ' tmp.txt
1278 perl -p -i -e ' s/\\\'o/o/g ' tmp.txt
1279 perl -p -i -e ' s/\\\'o/g ' tmp.txt
1280 perl -p -i -e ' s/\\\'^o/o/g ' tmp.txt
1281 perl -p -i -e " s/\\\'o/o/g " tmp.txt
1282 perl -p -i -e " s/\\\'o/o/g " tmp.txt
1283 perl -p -i -e " s/\\\'u/u/g " tmp.txt
```

```

1284 perl -p -i -e ' s/\u //g ' tmp.txt
1285 perl -p -i -e ' s/\"u/u/g ' tmp.txt
1286 perl -p -i -e ' s/\"i /i/g ' tmp.txt
1287 perl -p -i -e ' s/\"i/i/g ' tmp.txt
1288 perl -p -i -e " s/\"{i}/i/g " tmp.txt
1289 perl -p -i -e ' s/\"{i}/i/g ' tmp.txt
1290 perl -p -i -e ' s/\"{c}/c/g ' tmp.txt
1291

```

We also remove L^AT_EX text formatting commands (such as `\textit`, `\textbf`, etc), simple math symbols (\sim , μ for instance; this list is to be customized depending on the proceedings data) and remove backquotes (`\`):

```

1292 #echo " "
1293 #echo "__ removed textit, texbf, {, }: __"
1294 perl -p -i -e ' s/--/-/g ' tmp.txt
1295 perl -p -i -e " s/\"ss/ss/g " tmp.txt
1296 perl -p -i -e ' s/\"textsuperscript //g ' tmp.txt
1297 perl -p -i -e " s/\"&/&/g " tmp.txt
1298 perl -p -i -e ' s/\"mu/mu\:/g ' tmp.txt
1299 perl -p -i -e ' s/\"sim\s//g ' tmp.txt
1300 perl -p -i -e ' s/\"sim//g ' tmp.txt
1301 perl -p -i -e ' s/\"s\:/g ' tmp.txt
1302
1303 perl -p -i -e ' s/\"$/g ' tmp.txt
1304 perl -p -i -e " s/textit //g " tmp.txt
1305 perl -p -i -e " s/textbf //g " tmp.txt

```

We finally remove other left-overs L^AT_EX text formatting commands only at the end (such as `{`, `}`, etc), and accents reminders (`'`, `'`, `"`, etc):

```

1306 perl -p -i -e " s/\"{/g " tmp.txt
1307 perl -p -i -e " s/\"}/g " tmp.txt
1308 perl -p -i -e ' s/\"\'"/g ' tmp.txt
1309 perl -p -i -e " s/\"\'\'/"/g " tmp.txt
1310
1311 #echo " "
1312 #echo "__ removed \: ___"
1313 perl -pi -e 's/\"//g' tmp.txt
1314 perl -pi -e 's/\"s{2,10}\{}/ /g' tmp.txt
1315 perl -pi -e 's/\"s{2,10}/ /g' tmp.txt
1316
1317 cp tmp.txt $outputfile
1318 </removeLaTeXcmds>

```

7.10 paperssplitpreamble.sh: Preamble of papersplit.sh

Name paperssplitpreamble.sh

Type Unix/bash script preamble

Purpose preamble for the paperssplit.sh script, that is generated by running `exportIndividualPDFs.sh`

Note it is not meant to be directly used by the user.

We set macros from the script arguments (path, T_EX file name without extension, paper info folder, split PDFs folder, PDF proceedings folder):

```

1319 <*paperssplitpreamble>
1320 #!/bin/bash

```

```

1321
1322 args=("$@")
1323 GPATH=${args[0]}
1324 TEXTFILE=${args[1]} # example1
1325 INPATH=${args[2]} # papers_info
1326 SPPATH=${args[3]} #papers_split
1327 PDFPATH=${args[4]}
1328
1329 cd ${GPATH}
1330 SPPATH=${GPATH}/${SPPATH}
1331 PDFFILE=${GPATH}/${TEXTFILE}.pdf # PDF proceedings
1332 echo "PDF proc used for individual PDFs extraction:\n --> $PDFFILE"
1333 echo "saving tmp .ps and .pdf files into\n --> $SPPATH"
1334 </papersplitpreamble)

```

7.11 papersinfo.sh: Generate individual PDFs with proper metadata

Name papersinfo.sh

Type Unix/bash script

Purpose adds proper metadata to each paper

Dependencies removeLaTeXcmds.sh and working pdftk

Note to be used once individual papers have been exported from the whole PDF proceedings.

```

1335 <*papersinfo)
1336 #!/bin/bash
1337

```

We first get the script arguments, which are in the order:

```

1338 args=("$@")

```

1. the folder where individual PDFs are stored:

```

1339 GPATH=${args[0]} #= ~/proceedings/e-proceedings

```

2. the finished proceedings (PDF file, without extension):

```

1340 TEXTFILE=${args[1]} #= ICMC2009_proceedings

```

3. the folder where pdftk information files are stored (same as in buildprocelpb.sh):

```

1341 INPATH=${args[2]} #= papers_info

```

4. the folder (same as in buildprocelpb.sh) where are stored individual pdf files (obtained from splitting the proceedings):

```

1342 SPPATH=${args[3]} #= papers_split

```

5. the folder where final individual pdf files with proper PDF metadata will be stored:

```

1343 PDFPATH=${args[4]} #= ~/proceedings/e-proceedings

```

6. the folder where individual .pdftk files were generated by L^AT_EX (ex: pdtk_info/):

```

1344 PDFTKPATH=${args[5]} #= ~/pdftk_info

```

```

1345

```

Let's go! We build the proceedings file name, and list individual PDF files:

```
1346 PDFFILE=${TEXFILE}.pdf      # for use in the paper_split.sh and paper_info.sh scripts
1347
1348 cd ${GPATH}/${SPPATH}
1349 filelist='ls *.pdf'
1350 mkdir ${PDFPATH}
1351
```

Then, for each PDF file:

```
1352 cd ${GPATH}
1353 chmod +x removeLaTeXcmds.sh
1354
1355 for file in $filelist
1356 do
1357   base=${file%/*}
```

- remove \LaTeX commands (and accents) from the pdftk information files generated by the \LaTeX run with the `pdftk=true` option:

```
1358 echo "removing LaTeX accents: ${base}.pdftk -> ${base}_clean.info"
1359 # echo "cmd: removeLaTeXcmds.sh ${GPATH} ${PDFTKPATH}/${base}.pdftk ${INPATH}/${base}_clean.in
1360 ${GPATH}/removeLaTeXcmds.sh ${GPATH} ${PDFTKPATH}/${base}.pdftk ${INPATH}/${base}_clean.info
```

- use pdftk²⁷ to update each .pdf file's info:

```
1361 echo "adding PDF metadata:    ${base}_clean.info -> ${base}.pdf"
1362 # echo "cmd: pdftk ${SPPATH}/${base}.pdf update_info ${INPATH}/${base}_clean.info output ${PDF
1363 echo "pdftk ${GPATH}/${SPPATH}/${base}.pdf update_info ${GPATH}/${INPATH}/${base}_clean.info
1364 pdftk ${GPATH}/${SPPATH}/${base}.pdf update_info ${GPATH}/${INPATH}/${base}_clean.info output
1365 done
1366 </papersinfo>
```

7.12 buildpapers.sh: Re-compile all papers

Name buildpapers.sh

Type Unix/bash script

Purpose run \LaTeX on each paper

Note Useful if you need to make modifications to all papers; for instance to force each individual paper to have the same first page number as the one it has in the proceedings (for papers with page numbers included in the footer).

```
1367 <*buildpapers>
1368 #!/bin/sh
1369
1370 # Compile all papers with 'pdflatex' of 'latex'
1371 # (depending if they are in 'sources_pdftex' or 'sources_tex')
1372 # and copy resulting pdf files in the 'papers' folder.
1373 # Expected tree structure:
1374 #   proceedings/papers/sources_pdftex/
1375 #   proceedings/papers/sources_tex/
1376 # with this script in 'proceedings/'
1377
1378 #--- choose if you compile from scratch or only once
```

²⁷Get pdftk at: <http://www.accesspdf.com/pdftk/>

```

1379 #BUILD_TYPE=final      #recompile and re-do biblio
1380 BUILD_TYPE=renumber    #recompile only once for re-numbering
1381
1382 #--- set system dependent variables
1383 LATEXPATH="/usr/texbin/" # TeXLive
1384
1385 #--- paths
1386 LATEX=$LATEXPATH"latex"
1387 DVIPDF=/usr/local/bin/dvipdf
1388 PDFLATEX=$LATEXPATH"pdflatex"
1389 BIBTEX=$LATEXPATH"bibtex"
1390 MAKEINDEX=$LATEXPATH"makeindex"
1391 PROCSTY='dafx_06.sty'
1392
1393 #--- Compiling .tex files with pdfLaTeX
1394 cd papers/sources_pdftex
1395 for i in *; do
1396   echo; echo; echo '=====> Compiling' $i '.tex' with pdfLaTeX <====='
1397   cd $i
1398   # copy the paper style (in case you changed it)
1399   cp ../../$PROCSTY .
1400   echo; echo ' ---> 1st compilation of ' $i '.tex'
1401   $PDFLATEX $i
1402   if [ $BUILD_TYPE = final ]; then
1403     echo; echo ' ---> Compiling the bibliography ' $i '.tex'
1404     $BIBTEX $i
1405     echo; echo ' --- 2nd compilation of ' $i '.tex'
1406     $PDFLATEX $i
1407     echo; echo ' ---> 3rd compilation of ' $i '.tex'
1408     $PDFLATEX $i
1409   fi
1410   #--- copy the pdf where the proceedings will be assembled
1411   cp $i.pdf ../../
1412   cd ..
1413 done
1414 #--- Compiling .tex files with LaTeX (problems related with hyperref)
1415 cd ../sources_tex
1416 for i in *; do
1417   echo; echo; echo '=====> Compiling' $i '.tex' with LaTeX <====='
1418   cd $i
1419   #--- copy the paper proceedings style (if you changed the tree)
1420   cp ../../$PROCSTY .
1421   echo; echo ' ---> 1st compilation of ' $i '.tex '
1422   $LATEX $i.tex
1423   if [ $BUILD_TYPE = final ]; then
1424     echo; echo ' ---> Compiling the bibliography ' $i '.tex '
1425     $BIBTEX $i
1426     echo; echo ' ---> 2nd compilation of ' $i '.tex '
1427     $LATEX $i
1428     echo; echo ' ---> 3rd compilation of ' $i '.tex '
1429     $LATEX $i
1430   fi
1431   #--- produce the pdf from dvi
1432   $DVIPDF $i.dvi $i.pdf
1433   #--- copy the pdf where the proceedings will be assembled
1434   cp $i.pdf ../../

```

```
1435 cd ..
1436 done
1437 </buildpapers>
```

7.13 buildcppdfpapers.sh: Copy all PDFs papers at the right place

Name buildcppdfpapers.sh

Type Unix/bash script

Purpose copies all PDF files at the right place (*i.e.* in 'papers/')

Note the previous Unix script already does it, but you may want to only copy the files, not re-run \LaTeX them.

```
1438 <*buildcppdfpapers>
1439 #!/bin/sh
1440
1441 cd papers/sources_tex
1442 for i in *; do
1443   echo '*****' $i '*****'
1444   cp $i/$i.pdf ..
1445 done
1446 cd ../sources_pdftex
1447 for i in *; do
1448   echo '*****' $i '*****'
1449   cp $i/$i.pdf ..
1450 done
1451 </buildcppdfpapers>
```

Conclusion and copyright

It now seems that you have all the necessary files, scripts and information with a series of working and complete examples, in order to produce your v own conference proceedings! Have fun using `confproc`!!!

`confproc` is Copyright © 2011 by Vincent Verfaille <confproc.verfaille@gmail.com>

There is no warranty for the `confproc` package. I provide `confproc` 'as is', without warranty of any kind, either expressed or implied, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. The entire risk as to the quality and performance of `confproc` is with you. Should `confproc` prove defective, you assume the cost of all necessary servicing, repair, or correction.

The `confproc` package may be distributed and/or modified under the conditions of the L^AT_EX Project Public License (see [4]), either version 1.2 of this license or (at your option) any later version.

The latest version of this license is in www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt and version 1.2 or later is part of all distributions of L^AT_EX version 1999/12/01 or later.

8 Implementation

Please note: The macros containing a ‘@’ are internal commands. They do *not* belong to the user interface and should not be called directly by the end user! You may get unpredictable results if you don’t know what you are doing. Internal macros may be changed by me without announcement or warning, so be careful. Use them at your own risk if you cannot resist. . .

8.1 Key-value option management

New [v0.7]

We use the following two packages to manage the options with the `key=value` format [12, 13]:

```
1452 <*package>
1453 \RequirePackage{kvoptions}
1454 \RequirePackage{kvoptions-patch}
```

as well as the `xifthen` package for simpler if/then tests (related to the option management):

```
1455 \RequirePackage{xifthen}
```

I know that next step is useless (it corresponds to the default values provided by `keyval` if no value is given)... but let’s explicitly set the `keyval-key` to be used:

```
1456 \SetupKeyvalOptions{family=confproc,prefix=confproc@}
```

and the `\confproc` command for managing key values:

```
1457 \newcommand*{\confproc}[1]{\setkeys{confproc}{#1}}
```

8.2 Options declaration

8.2.1 Obsolete options

We then define pre-version 0.5 options that became obsolete (their name has changed or their functionality has disappeared):

```
1458 \DeclareStringOption{compil}{\PackageWarning{confproc}{Option %
1459 "compil=bib*" ignored since v0.5; use "bib=" instead of "compil=bib*"}}
1460 \DeclareVoidOption{draft}{\PackageWarning{confproc}{Option "draft" %
1461 ignored since v0.5; use "papers=draft" instead}}
1462 \DeclareVoidOption{final}{\PackageWarning{confproc}{Option "final" %
1463 ignored since v0.5; use "papers=final" instead}}
1464 \DeclareVoidOption{tocnumleft}{\PackageWarning{confproc}{Option %
1465 "tocnumleft" ignored since v0.5; use "tocnum=left" instead}}
1466 \DeclareVoidOption{tocnumright}{\PackageWarning{confproc}{Option %
1467 "tocnumright" ignored since v0.5; use "tocnum=right" instead}}
1468 \DeclareVoidOption{cleardoublepage}{\PackageWarning{confproc}{Option %
1469 "cleardoublepage" ignored since v0.5; use "twosidepapers" instead}}
1470 \DeclareVoidOption{clearsinglepage}{\PackageWarning{confproc}{Option %
1471 "clearsinglepage" ignored since v0.5; use "onesidepapers" instead}}
```

8.2.2 Options of the book package

The usual font sizes and paper size options are used to set the document parameters. Right now, only three font sizes are supported²⁸, namely 10pt, 11pt, and 12pt):

```
10pt 1472 \DeclareVoidOption{10pt}{%
11pt   \expandafter\PassOptionsToPackage
12pt   \expandafter{\CurrentOption}{book}}
1475 \DeclareVoidOption{11pt}{%
```

²⁸It still wonder how bigger/smaller font sizes could be useful for proceedings; so if you need it, please ask!

```

1476 \expandafter\PassOptionsToPackage
1477 \expandafter{\CurrentOption}{book}}
1478 \DeclareVoidOption{12pt}{%
1479 \expandafter\PassOptionsToPackage
1480 \expandafter{\CurrentOption}{book}}

```

letterpaper For paper size, we define only the two usual ones for proceedings, namely **letterpaper**:

```

1481 \newif\if@proc@letterpaper
1482 \DeclareVoidOption{letterpaper}{%
1483 \@proc@letterpapertrue
1484 \setlength\paperheight {11in}%
1485 \setlength\paperwidth {8.5in}%
1486 \setlength\oddsidemargin {-4.95trueem}%
1487 \setlength\evensidemargin {-4.95trueem}%
1488 \def\shiftsletterpaper{}%
1489 \PassOptionsToClass{\CurrentOption}{book}%
1490 \PassOptionsToPackage{\CurrentOption}{hyperref}}

```

a4paper and **a4paper**:

```

1491 \DeclareVoidOption{a4paper}{%
1492 \@proc@letterpaperfalse
1493 \setlength\paperheight {297mm}%
1494 \setlength\paperwidth {210mm}%
1495 \setlength\oddsidemargin {-4.95trueem}%
1496 \setlength\evensidemargin {-10.95trueem}%
1497 \def\shiftsa4paper{}%
1498 \PassOptionsToClass{\CurrentOption}{book}%
1499 \PassOptionsToPackage{\CurrentOption}{hyperref}}

```

They are used to set the document, and then passed to the book and hyperref packages. Both

oneside **oneside** and **twoside** options are re-defined as they were in the book package, and then passed to it:

```

twoside
twoside 1500 \DeclareVoidOption{oneside}{\@twosidefalse \@mparswitchfalse%
1501 \PassOptionsToPackage{\CurrentOption}{book}}
1502 \DeclareVoidOption{twoside}{\@twosidetrue \@mparswitchtrue%
1503 \PassOptionsToPackage{\CurrentOption}{book}}

```

8.2.3 Proceedings-specific formatting options

twosidepapers We define a pair of complementary options (**twosidepapers** | **onesidepapers**) that allow for a dou-
onesidepapers ble/single page clear after each paper:

```

1504 \DeclareBoolOption[true]{twosidepapers}
1505 \DeclareComplementaryOption{onesidepapers}{twosidepapers}

```

papers The **papers** option is a string defaulted to **final**:

```

1506 \DeclareStringOption[final]{papers}

```

that can have three values: **empty** (very fast run, with faked insertion of user-selected pages by confproc, and without page existence check), **draft** (not too slow run, with page existence check and faked insertion of user-selected pages by pdfpages), **final** (slow run with real insertion of user-selected pages by pdfpages) and **countpages** (slow run, with real insertion of all pages by pdfpages).

electronic The **electronic** is a boolean defaulted to **true**:

```

1507 \DeclareBoolOption[true]{electronic}

```

(that generates an electronic document with color hyperlinks)

`printed` and `printed` is declared as its complementary:
1508 `\DeclareComplementaryOption{printed}{electronic}`
(and generates black color links).

`binding` The `binding` is a string defaulted to `0mm`:
New [v0.7] 1509 `\DeclareStringOption[0mm]{binding}`
it in facts defines a length used for the inner binding.

`headers` The `headers` is a string defaulted to `allpages`:
1510 `\DeclareStringOption[allpages]{headers}`
It can take four values: `headers=no` to add no headers on any page, `headers=pdfonly` to add headers on PDF papers only, `headers=exceptpdf` to add headers on all pages except the inserted PDFs, and `headers=allpages` to add headers on all pages.

`bib` The `bib` is a string defaulted to `none`:
New [v0.7] 1511 `\DeclareStringOption[none]{bib}`
that indicates the general bibliography status (four values): `bib=none`, `bib=merge` (merging process, only 1st and last page are inserted), `bib=backref` (generating proper back-references: citations still appear in green in the last page's header) and `bib=final` (removing last page's citation, but also breaking back-references in next L^AT_EX runs).

8.2.4 List of inserted papers

`paperselec` The `paperselec` is a string defaulted to `all`:
New [v0.7] 1512 `\DeclareStringOption[all]{paperselec}`

8.2.5 Lists formatting

`twocoltoc` The `twocoltoc` is a boolean defaulted to `false`:
1513 `\DeclareBoolOption[false]{twocoltoc}`
that allows to produce a 2-columns table of contents.

`onecoltoc` The `onecoltoc` is its complementary:
1514 `\DeclareComplementaryOption{onecoltoc}{twocoltoc}`
used to produce a usual 1-column table of contents.

`tocnum` The `tocnum` is a string defaulted to `left`:
1515 `\DeclareStringOption[left]{tocnum}`
that allows to place TOC numbers either on the left or the right side.

`twocolbib` The `twocolbib` is a boolean defaulted to `true`:
1516 `\DeclareBoolOption[true]{twocolbib}`
that produces either a tow- or a one-column(s) general bibliography.

`onecolbib` The `onecolbib` is its complementary:
1517 `\DeclareComplementaryOption{onecolbib}{twocolbib}`

`twocolindex` The `twocolindex` is a boolean defaulted to `true`:
1518 `\DeclareBoolOption[true]{twocolindex}`
that provides a 2-columns index of authors.

`threecolindex` The `threecolindex` is its complementary:
1519 `\DeclareComplementaryOption{threecolindex}{twocolindex}`
and therefore provides a 3-columns index of authors.

8.2.6 Help for checking data and layout

- `checktitle` The `checktitle` is a boolean defaulted to `false`:
1520 `\DeclareBoolOption>false}{checktitle}`
- `checkauthor` The `checkauthor` is a string defaulted to `false`:
1521 `\DeclareBoolOption>false}{checkauthor}`
- `colorheaders` The `colorheaders` is a string defaulted to `black`:
1522 `\DeclareStringOption[black]{colorheaders}`
- `showmarginlines` The `showmarginlines` is a boolean defaulted to `false`:
1523 `\DeclareBoolOption>false}{showmarginlines}`
- `showpapernumber` The `showpapernumber` is a boolean defaulted to `false`:
1524 `\DeclareBoolOption>false}{showpapernumber}`
- `movepagenumber` The `movepagenumber` is a boolean defaulted to `false`:
1525 `\DeclareBoolOption>false}{movepagenumber}`
that is used to move the footer in order to check page numbers, when the PDF papers already have a page number before insertion.

8.2.7 Verbose and pdftk options

- `debug` The `debug` is a boolean defaulted to `false`:
1526 `\DeclareBoolOption>false}{debug}`
- `verbose` The `verbose` is a boolean defaulted to `false`:
1527 `\DeclareBoolOption>false}{verbose}`
- `pdftk` The `pdftk` is a boolean defaulted to `false`:
1528 `\DeclareBoolOption>false}{pdftk}`

When used, it allows to generate bash commands (in a file with `.pdftk` extension) that will call `pdftk`²⁹ to set the `.pdf` file's author, subject and producer/creator, and save these data in a temporary folder for future use
- `pdftksubject` The `pdftkfolder` is a string that indicates the (temporary) folder into which individual `.pdftk` files are written. Note that the folder has to exist prior to run `LATEX`, otherwise error will be displayed:
 1529 `\DeclareStringOption[.]{pdftkfolder}`
- `pdftksubject` The `pdftksubject` is a string that indicates the PDF subject to `pdftk`:
1530 `\DeclareStringOption[Conference]{pdftksubject}`
- `pdftkproducer` The `pdftkproducer` is a string that indicates the PDF creator (ie. the program generating the new PDF) to `pdftk`:
1531 `\DeclareStringOption[pdftk 1.12 + Ghostscript 8.71]{pdftkproducer}`
- `pdftkcreator` The `pdftkcreator` is a string that indicates the PDF creator (ie. the program that initially created the PDF) to `pdftk`:
1532 `\DeclareStringOption[LaTeX2e + confproc 0.7]{pdftkcreator}`

²⁹Get `pdftk` at: <http://www.accesspdf.com/pdftk/>

8.2.8 Options passed to hyperref and geometry

hyperref The `hyperref` is a string:

```
1533 \DeclareStringOption{hyperref}[]
1534 \DeclareStringOption{geometry}[]
1535 \DeclareStringOption{afterhyperref}[]
1536 \DeclareStringOption{beforehyperref}[]
```

8.2.9 Unknown options: passed to the hyperref package

In its very first version (0.1i), the `confproc` package was passing the following `hyperref`-specific options to it: `colorlinks`, `colorlinks` and `colorlinks=true`, `colorlinks=false`, `linkcolor`, `citecolor`, `urlcolor`, `pagecolor`, `bookmarksopen`, `bookmarksopen=true`, `bookmarksopen=false`. Not knowing how to use the `keyval` package, I used a simple and dirty trick, re-defining and passing these options, but it was limiting the customization of `hyperref` to what I believed was useful. To remove this bias, versions 0.2 to 0.5 treated them as any unknown options, that were passed to the `hyperref` package. While this behavior is still true, *it will be discontinued in the next versions, so please refrain to using it.*

 New [v0.7]

We print a warning message for unknown options, and pass them to `hyperref`:

```
1537 \DeclareDefaultOption{\PackageWarning{confproc}{Unknown %
1538   option '\CurrentOption'; passed to 'hyperref'}}%
1539   \PassOptionsToClass{\CurrentOption}{hyperref}}
```

8.3 Options processing

8.3.1 Default values for options

When not set by the user, options have the following default settings:

```
1540 \ExecuteOptions{letterpaper,10pt,twoside,twosidepapers,%
1541   electronic,binding=0mm,papers=final,paperselec=all,headers=allpages,%
1542   onecoltoc,tocnum=left,threecolindex,twocolbib,bib=none,%
1543   checktitle=false,checkauthor=false,showmarginlines=false,%
1544   showpapernumber=false,movepage number=false,colorheaders=black,%
1545   verbose=false,debug=false,pdftk=false,%
1546   beforehyperref={},afterhyperref={},%
1547   hyperref={colorlinks=true,linkcolor=red,citecolor=blue,urlcolor=blue,%
1548     bookmarksopen=true,bookmarksopenlevel=1}}%
1549   geometry={text={6.9in,9in},%
1550     inner=0.8in,top=1in,bottom=1in,%
1551     headsep=7.05mm,footskip=10mm,voffset=-5mm}}
```

8.3.2 Options processing

Options can now be processed thanks to `kvoptions`:

```
1552 \ProcessKeyvalOptions*
```

8.4 Application of option values

8.4.1 Package information messages and option settings

The `electronic` version only makes use of visible hyper-references (clickable links):

```
1553 \ifconfproc@electronic%
1554   \PassOptionsToPackage{colorlinks=true}{hyperref}%
1555   \PackageInfo{confproc}{use color links with hyperref}%
1556 \else
```

```

1557 \PassOptionsToPackage{colorlinks=false}{hyperref}%
1558 \PackageInfo{confproc}{does not use color links with hyperref}%
1559 \fi
1560

```

The `binding` option manages the binding length for both the geometry package and paper insertion with `pdfpages`:

```

1561 \newlength{\proc@binding}
1562 \ifthenelse%
1563   {\equal{\confproc@binding}{}}
1564   {\setlength{\proc@binding}{0mm}
1565     \PackageInfo{confproc}{setting binding to default (0mm)}}
1566   {\setlength{\proc@binding}{\confproc@binding}
1567     \PackageInfo{confproc}{setting binding to \confproc@binding}}
1568

```

With `papers=`, papers are inserted either normally from page 1 to a user-defined value:

```

1569 \newif\if@proc@IncludePDFs

```

replaced from page 1 to a user-defined value:

```

1570 \newif\if@proc@ReplacePDFs

```

or fully inserted (discarding the user-defined paper number of pages):

```

1571 \newif\if@proc@IncludeFullPDFs

```

We define a new file into which the number of pages will be counted:

```

1572 \newwrite\npagesfile

```

For `papers=empty`, papers are replaced by a `confproc`-specific layout:

```

1573 \ifthenelse%
1574   {\equal{\confproc@papers}{empty}}%
1575   {\PackageInfo{confproc}{replacing PDF files by information pages}%
1576     \@proc@ReplacePDFstrue
1577     \@proc@IncludeFullPDFsfalse
1578     \@proc@IncludePDFsfalse
1579     \immediate\openout\npagesfile=\jobname.nps}
1580   {\ifthenelse%

```

For `papers=draft`, papers are replaced by a `pdfpages`-specific layout (also called `draft`):

```

1581   {\equal{\confproc@papers}{draft}}%
1582   {\PackageInfo{confproc}{not including PDF files with 'pdfpages'}%
1583     \PassOptionsToPackage{draft}{pdfpages}%
1584     \@proc@ReplacePDFsfalse
1585     \@proc@IncludeFullPDFsfalse
1586     \@proc@IncludePDFsfalse
1587     \immediate\openout\npagesfile=\jobname.nps}

```

For `papers=final`, papers are normally inserted from page 1 to the user-defined number of pages:

```

1588   {\ifthenelse%
1589     {\equal{\confproc@papers}{final}}
1590     {\PackageInfo{confproc}{including PDF files with 'pdfpages'}%
1591       \PassOptionsToPackage{final}{pdfpages}%
1592       \@proc@ReplacePDFsfalse
1593       \@proc@IncludeFullPDFsfalse
1594       \@proc@IncludePDFstrue
1595       \immediate\openout\npagesfile=\jobname.nps}

```

For `papers=countpages`, papers are fully inserted, discarding the user-defined number of pages:

```

1596   {\ifthenelse%
1597     {\equal{\confproc@papers}{countpages}}

```

```

1598     {\PackageInfo{confproc}{counting each paper's number of %
1599     pages by including all its pages}
1600 %     \PassOptionsToPackage{draft}{pdfpages}
1601     \@proc@ReplacePDFsfalse
1602     \@proc@IncludeFullPDFstrue
1603     \@proc@IncludePDFsfalse
1604     \immediate\openout\npagesfile=\jobname.npc}

```

In case of unknown value for `papers=`, the default is to insert papers using `papers=final`:

```

1605     {\PackageWarning{confproc}{unknown option %
1606     'papers=\confproc@papers' ; using 'papers=final'}}%
1607     \@proc@ReplacePDFsfalse{}
1608     \@proc@IncludeFullPDFsfalse
1609     \@proc@IncludePDFstrue
1610     \immediate\openout\npagesfile=\jobname.nps}
1611 }
1612 }
1613 }
1614

```

To manage fancy headers, we need two new ifs so as to process differently pages with papers and pages without papers.

```

1615 \newif\if@proc@FancyHeadersOnPapers
1616 \newif\if@proc@FancyHeadersExceptPapers

```

For `headers=none`, no headers/footers are added:

```

1617 \ifthenelse%
1618 {\equal{\confproc@headers}{none}}
1619 {\PackageInfo{confproc}{no headers}}%
1620 \@proc@FancyHeadersOnPapersfalse
1621 \@proc@FancyHeadersExceptPapersfalse}

```

For `headers=pdfonly`, headers/footers are only added to inserted PDFs:

```

1622 {\ifthenelse%
1623 {\equal{\confproc@headers}{pdfonly}}
1624 {\PackageInfo{confproc}{headers on inserted PDFs only}}%
1625 \@proc@FancyHeadersOnPaperstrue
1626 \@proc@FancyHeadersExceptPapersfalse}

```

For `headers=exceptpd`, headers/footers are added to all pages but inserted PDFs:

```

1627 {\ifthenelse%
1628 {\equal{\confproc@headers}{exceptpdf}}
1629 {\PackageInfo{confproc}{headers for all pages except PDFs}}%
1630 \@proc@FancyHeadersOnPapersfalse
1631 \@proc@FancyHeadersExceptPaperstrue}

```

For `headers=allpages`, headers/footers are added to all pages including inserted PDF:

```

1632 {\ifthenelse%
1633 {\equal{\confproc@headers}{allpages}}
1634 {\PackageInfo{confproc}{headers on all pages, PDFs included}}%
1635 \@proc@FancyHeadersOnPaperstrue
1636 \@proc@FancyHeadersExceptPaperstrue}
1637 {\PackageWarning{confproc}{unknown %
1638 'headers=\confproc@headers' option (using 'headers=allpages')}}}
1639 }
1640 }
1641 }
1642

```

To manage the general bibliography, we need two new ifs: one for the existence of the general bibliography and one for the appearance of the bibliographic items at the last page of each paper's header.

```
1643 \newif\if@proc@BibNone
1644 \newif\if@proc@BibRemoveCiteHdr
```

For `bib=merge`, each paper is replaced by its first and last page only, where the bibliography is displayed:

```
1645 \ifthenelse%
1646   {\equal{\confproc@bib}{merge}}%
1647   {\PackageInfo{confproc}{bib: display 1st+last page of each paper}}%
1648   \@proc@BibNonefalse%
1649   \def\conf@BibMerge{}%
1650   \@proc@BibRemoveCiteHdrfalse}%
```

For `bib=backref`, each paper is inserted as defined by the user, and back-references appear on the last page (upper left, in green):

```
1651   {\ifthenelse%
1652     {\equal{\confproc@bib}{backref}}%
1653     {\PackageInfo{confproc}{bib: displays back references}}%
1654     \@proc@BibNonefalse%
1655     \def\conf@BibBackRef{}%
1656     \@proc@BibRemoveCiteHdrfalse}%
```

For `bib=final`, each paper is inserted as defined by the user, and back-references do not more appear (which means they are broken on successive L^AT_EX runs):

```
1657   {\ifthenelse%
1658     {\equal{\confproc@bib}{final}}%
1659     {\PackageInfo{confproc}{bib: hide bib items using 'nocite'}}%
1660     \@proc@BibNonefalse%
1661     \@proc@BibRemoveCiteHdrtrue}%
```

For `bib=none`, no bibliography is displayed at the end of the proceedings:

```
1662     {\PackageInfo{confproc}{bibliography: none}}%
1663     \@proc@BibNonetrue}%
1664   }%
1665 }
1666 %\confproc@bib\@empty
1667 % \typeout{confproc/bibliography: no setting for "bib="! 5
1668 %   Please use one of: none, backref, merge of final.}%
```

`\proccite`
New [v0.7]

We define the `\confcite` citation function that can be changed depending on the citation function used by the chosen bibliography style:

```
1669 \if@proc@BibRemoveCiteHdr
1670   \newcommand{\confcite}[1]{\nocite{#1}}
1671   \PackageInfo{confproc}{removing citations (with nocite{*}): %
1672     next run should be the last (will loose hyperlinks)}
1673 \else \newcommand{\confcite}[1]{\cite{#1}}
1674 \fi
```

To manage the left or right numbering of the table of contents, we need a new if:

```
1675 \newif\if@proc@TocNumberingRight
1676 \ifthenelse%
1677   {\equal{\confproc@tocnum}{left}}%
1678   {\PackageInfo{confproc}{TOC numbering on left}}%
1679   \@proc@TocNumberingRightfalse%
1680   {\ifthenelse%
```

```

1681     {\equal{\confproc@tocnum}{right}}%
1682     {\PackageInfo{confproc}{TOC numbering on right}%
1683       \@proc@TocNumberingRighttrue}
1684     {\PackageWarning{confproc}{unknown tocnum=\confproc@tocnum %
1685       (using 'right' instead)}%
1686       \@proc@TocNumberingRighttrue}
1687   }
1688

```

Then come various options for checking the document layout and content. When willing to check spelling errors in the papers' author list:

```

1689 \ifconfproc@checkauthor
1690   \PackageInfo{confproc}{add 'author list' field on the paper's 1st page}%
1691 \else \PackageInfo{confproc}{do not add author list}%
1692 \fi

```

and in the paper titles:

```

1693 \ifconfproc@checktitle
1694   \PackageInfo{confproc}{add title field on the paper's 1st page}%
1695 \else \PackageInfo{confproc}{do not add title}%
1696 \fi

```

We also show margin lines:

```

1697 \ifconfproc@showmarginlines
1698   \PackageInfo{confproc}{show margin lines to check template-compliance}%
1699 \else \PackageInfo{confproc}{do not show margin lines}%
1700 \fi

```

add the paper number (useful when not using the `papers=empty` option):

```

1701 \ifconfproc@showpapernumber
1702   \PackageInfo{confproc}{add paper number below page number}%
1703 \else \PackageInfo{confproc}{do not add paper number below page number}%
1704 \fi
1705

```

With the `twosidepapers` option, papers always start on the right side (like book chapters):

```

1706 \ifconfproc@twosidepapers
1707   \PackageInfo{confproc}{papers opening on right (odd) side}
1708 \else
1709   \PackageInfo{confproc}{papers opening on any side}
1710 \fi
1711

```

With the `verbose` option, more information about paper insertion is provided to the user:

```

1712 \newif\if@proc@verbose
1713 \@proc@verbosefalse
1714 \ifconfproc@verbose
1715   \@proc@verbosetrue
1716   \PackageInfo{confproc}{verbose mode turned on}
1717 \else \PackageInfo{confproc}{verbose mode turned off}
1718 \fi

```

With the `debug` option, even more information is provided to the class developer:

```

1719 \ifconfproc@debug
1720   \@proc@verbosefalse
1721   \PackageInfo{confproc}{verbose mode turned off and debug turned on}
1722   \PassOptionsToPackage{debug}{hyperref}
1723 \else \PackageInfo{confproc}{debug mode turned on}
1724 \fi

```

8.4.2 Package information messages and option settings

We pass options to specific packages, possibly overwriting previous settings:

```
1725 \PassOptionsToPackage{\confproc@hyperref}{hyperref}
1726 \PassOptionsToPackage{\confproc@geometry}{geometry}
```

8.4.3 Print option values (hard debug mode)

New [v0.7] With the `verbose=true` option, all option values and defaults are printed in the `.log` file and window:

```
1727 \ifconfproc@verbose
1728 \typeout{_____}
1729 \if@proc@letterpaper
1730 \typeout{| | Document formatting:}
1731 \typeout{| | ____ letterpaper}
1732 \else
1733 \typeout{| | Document formatting:}
1734 \typeout{| | ____ a4paper}
1735 \fi
1736 \iffalse\@twoside \typeout{| | ____ twoside=false (=oneside)}
1737 \else \typeout{| | ____ twoside=true}
1738 \fi
1739 \ifconfproc@twosidepapers \typeout{| | ____ twosidepapers=true}
1740 \else \typeout{| | twosidepapers=false (=onesidepaper)}
1741 \fi
1742 \typeout{| | Proceedings-specific formatting:}
1743 \ifconfproc@electronic \typeout{| | ____ electronic=true (file version)}
1744 \else \typeout{| | ____ electronic=false (printed)}
1745 \fi
1746 \typeout{| | ____ binding=\confproc@binding (for printed version)}
1747 \typeout{| | ____ papers=\confproc@papers (paper insertion)}
1748 \typeout{| | ____ headers=\confproc@headers (header add to pages)}
1749
1750 \typeout{| | List of papers:}
1751 \typeout{| | ____ paperselec=\confproc@paperselec}
1752
1753 \typeout{| | Lists (toc, bib, index):}
1754 \ifconfproc@twocoltoc \typeout{| | ____ twocoltoc=true}
1755 \else \typeout{| | ____ twocoltoc=false (=onecoltoc)}
1756 \fi
1757 \ifthenelse{\equal{\confproc@tocnum}{left}}{%
1758   {\typeout{| | ____ tocnum=left}}
1759   {\typeout{| | ____ tocnum=right}}
1760 \ifconfproc@twocolbib \typeout{| | ____ twocolbib=true}
1761 \else \typeout{| | ____ twocolbib=false (=onecolbib)}
1762 \fi
1763 \typeout{| | ____ bib=\confproc@bib}
1764 \ifconfproc@twocolindex \typeout{| | ____ twocolindex=true}
1765 \else \typeout{| | ____ twocolindex=false (=threecolindex)}
1766 \fi
1767
1768 \typeout{| | Help for layout design:}
1769 \ifconfproc@checkauthor
1770 \typeout{| | ____ checkauthor=true (add author list to 1st page)}
1771 \else
1772 \typeout{| | ____ checkauthor=false (do not add author list to 1st page)}
1773 \fi
```

```

1774 \ifconfproc@checktitle
1775   \typeout{| | ____ checktitle=true (add title to 1st page)}
1776 \else
1777   \typeout{| | ____ checktitle=false (do not add title to 1st page)}
1778 \fi
1779
1780 \ifconfproc@showpapernumber
1781   \typeout{| | ____ showpapernumber=true (add paper number)}
1782 \else
1783   \typeout{| | ____ showpapernumber=false (do not add paper number)}
1784 \fi
1785 \ifconfproc@movepagenumber
1786   \typeout{| | ____ movepagenumber=true (move paper number for checking)}
1787 \else
1788   \typeout{| | ____ movepagenumber=false (do not move paper number)}
1789 \fi
1790 \ifconfproc@showmarginlines
1791   \typeout{| | ____ showmarginlines=true (add template format)}
1792 \else
1793   \typeout{| | ____ showmarginlines=false (do not add template format)}
1794 \fi
1795 \typeout{| | ____ colorheaders=\confproc@colorheaders (color for header/footer)}
1796
1797 \typeout{| | Verbose:}
1798 \ifconfproc@debug \typeout{| | ____ debug=true (for hyperref)}
1799 \else \typeout{| | ____ debug=false (for hyperref)}
1800 \fi
1801 \ifconfproc@verbose \typeout{| | ____ verbose=true (for confproc+hyperref)}
1802 \else \typeout{| | ____ verbose=false (for confproc+hyperref)}
1803 \fi
1804 \ifconfproc@pdftk
1805   \typeout{| | ____ pdftk=true (for use with pdftk to add PDF metadata)}
1806   \typeout{| | ____ pdftkfolder=\confproc@pdftkfolder (folder where .pdftk files are saved)}
1807   \typeout{| | ____ pdftksubject=\confproc@pdftksubject (subject for individual PDF metadata)}
1808   \typeout{| | ____ pdftkproducer=\confproc@pdftkproducer (producer for individual PDF metadata)}
1809   \typeout{| | ____ pdftkcreator=\confproc@pdftkcreator (creator for individual PDF metadata)}
1810 \else \typeout{| | ____ pdftk=false (for use with pdftk to add PDF metadata)}
1811 \fi
1812 \typeout{| | passed to hyperref: \confproc@hyperref}
1813 \typeout{| | passed to geometry: \confproc@geometry}
1814 \typeout{-----}
1815 \typeout{   }
1816 \fi

```

With the `pdftk=true` option, we also generate a general `.pdftk` file containing ann pdftk commands:

```

1817 \ifconfproc@pdftk
1818   \newwrite\pdftkinfoall
1819   \immediate\openout\pdftkinfoall=\jobname.pdftk
1820   \newwrite\pdftkinfofile
1821 \fi

```

8.5 Initialization

As you can see, this package is based on the book package for all its layout aspects.

```

1822 \LoadClass[10pt,letterpaper]{book}

```

8.6 Required packages

Several packages are included, among which many are required.

Use `graphicx` to insert logos (first page, welcome letters):

```
1823 \RequirePackage{graphicx}
```

Use `pdfpages` (core of this class) to insert individual papers as PDF documents, page-by-page:

```
1824 \RequirePackage{pdfpages}
```

Use `fancyhdr` to customize the headers and footers (for instance so that they match those of the paper templates):

```
1825 \RequirePackage{fancyhdr}
```

Use `tocbibind` to change the `\indexname` command; its options disable the automatic insertion in the table of contents (hand made insertion instead):

```
1826 \RequirePackage[nottoc,notbib,notindex]{tocbibind}
```

Use `titletoc` (part of the `titelsec` package) to change the table of contents layout (order of text, numbers, fonts, etc.):

```
1827 \RequirePackage[rightlabels]{titletoc}
```

Use `multitoc` with the `toc` option for a two columns table of contents:

```
1828 \ifconfproc@twocoltoc
1829 \RequirePackage[toc]{multitoc}
1830 \fi
```

Use the `index` package to enable the creation of the index of authors:

```
1831 \RequirePackage{index}
```

Use the `multitoc` package for a multi-columns table of contents or index:

```
1832 \RequirePackage{multicol}
```

`\theindex` Also, when asking for a 2 or 3 columns index, redefine the `\theindex` environment (modified from the `gatech-thesis-index.sty` package) as:

```
1833 \ifconfproc@twocolindex
1834 \renewenvironment{theindex}{%
1835   \if@twocolumn \@restonecolfalse
1836   \else \@restonecoltrue \fi
1837   \vspace*{-0.8cm}
1838   \section*{\indexname}}
1839   \let\item\@idxitem
1840   \columnseprule \z@
1841   \columnsep 35\p@
1842   \begin{multicols}{2}[%
1843     \ifx\index@prologue\@empty\else
1844       \index@prologue
1845       \bigskip
1846     \fi]%
1847   \parindent\z@
1848   \parskip\z@ \@plus .3\p@\relax
1849 }{\end{multicols}}%
1850   \if@restonecol \onecolumn
1851   \else \clearpage \fi}
1852 \else
1853 \renewenvironment{theindex}{%
1854   \if@twocolumn \@restonecolfalse
1855   \else \@restonecoltrue \fi
1856   \vspace*{-0.8cm}
1857   \section*{\indexname}}
```

```

1858 \let\item\@idxitem
1859 \columnseprule \z@
1860 \columnsep 35\p@
1861 \begin{multicols}{3}[%
1862 \ifx\index@prologue\@empty\else
1863 \index@prologue
1864 \bigskip
1865 \fi]%
1866 \parindent\z@
1867 \parskip\z@ \@plus .3\p@\relax
1868 }\end{multicols}%
1869 \if@restonecol \onecolumn
1870 \else \clearpage \fi }
1871 \fi

```

Use the `sectsty` package to change the sections font in the table of contents:

```
1872 \RequirePackage{sectsty}
```

Use the `newapave` style for the general bibliography:

```
1873 \RequirePackage{newapave}
```

If you do not wish to use the one developed for DAFx-06 but prefer to use the original `newapa` style, replace this last line in `confproc.cls` by:

```
\RequirePackage{newapa}
```

Links in the PDF files require to use the `color` package:

```
1874 \RequirePackage{color}
```

We predefine here the names and values for the color links, so that they can be used:

```

1875 \definecolor{colorforlink}{rgb}{0,0,0.5}
1876 \definecolor{colorforpage}{rgb}{0,0,0.5}
1877 \definecolor{colorforcite}{rgb}{0,0.5,0}
1878 \definecolor{colorforurl}{cmyk}{0,1,0,0}

```

together with the `hyperref` package with the following default options:

```

1879 %\confproc@beforehyperref{} %^^A TODO: not functioning yet
1880 \RequirePackage[pdftex,raiselinks,hyperindex,backref,pagebackref,%
1881 plainpages=false,pdfpagelabels,breaklinks,linktocpage,%
1882 pdfstartview=XYZ]{hyperref}
1883 %\confproc@afterhyperref{} %^^A TODO: not functioning yet

```

and with the `bookmark` package:

```

1884 %\RequirePackage[figure,table]{hypcap}
1885 \RequirePackage{bookmark}

```

8.7 Proceedings specific commands

We now define the default values of some proceedings-specific commands.

8.7.1 PDF metadata

`\procpdfauthor` Define commands to set the PDF metadata: `\procpdfauthor` for the author:

```
1886 \newcommand{\procpdfauthor}{[Proceedings author/editor]}
```

`\procpdftitle` `\procpdftitle` for the title:

```
1887 \newcommand{\procpdftitle}{[Proceedings title]}
```

`\procpdfsubject` and `\procpdfsubject` for the subject:

```
1888 \newcommand{\procpdfsubject}{[Proceedings short title] %
1889 ([Proceedings Acronym]), [City], [Country], [Dates]}
```

`\hypersetup` These commands are used in the `\hypersetup` command that is evaluated only when the document begins (so that you can redefine its author, title and subject):

```
1890 \AtBeginDocument{
1891   \hypersetup{
1892     pdfauthor = \procpdfauthor,
1893     pdftitle = \procpdftitle,
1894     pdfsubject = \procpdfsubject,
1895     pdfkeywords = {},
1896     pdfcreator = {LaTeX + confproc v0.7},
1897     pdfproducer = {pdfLaTeX}}
```

8.7.2 Page layout with geometry

The proceedings default page layout is defined thanks to geometry:

```
1898 \iffalse\@twoside
1899   \usepackage[bindingoffset=\proc@binding]{geometry}
1900 \else%
1901   \usepackage[twoside,bindingoffset=\proc@binding]{geometry}
1902 \fi
```

Those values may be changed in the preamble, depending on your paper template.

8.7.3 Special section names

`\contentsname` We redefine the names of the table of contents (as it should appear in itself):

```
1903 \renewcommand{\contentsname}{Conference Program}
```

`\bibname` the general bibliography as it appears in the document and in the table of contents:

```
1904 \renewcommand{\bibname}{Full Bibliography}
```

`\indexname` and the index of authors as it appears in the document and in the table of contents:

```
1905 \renewcommand{\indexname}{Index of Authors}
```

8.7.4 Header and footer

`\proclhead` We first define the default left header:

```
1906 \newcommand{\proclhead}{}
```

`\procchead` the default central header:

```
1907 \newcommand{\procchead}{\color{red}Proceedings of the... \hfill %
1908 01--29 February, 2001}
```

`\procrhead` and the default right header:

```
1909 \newcommand{\procrhead}{}
```

`\proclfoot` Similarly, we define the default left footer (empty):

```
1910 \newcommand{\proclfoot}{}
```

`\proccfoot` the default central footer:

```
1911 \newcommand{\proccfoot}{\small \color{red} Proc-\thepage}
```

`\procrfoot` and the default right footer (empty):

```
1912 \newcommand{\procrfoot}{}
```

We now define the default page styles for use with headers:

```
1913 \pagestyle{fancyplain}
```

`\headrulewidth` together with the corresponding rule width for the headers:

```
1914 \renewcommand{\headrulewidth}{0pt}
```

`\footrulewidth` and for the footers:

```
1915 \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{-5mm}
```

`\procfootvskip` We also define the vertical skip length to be applied to the footer:

```
1916 \newlength{\procfootvskip}
```

```
1917 \setlength{\procfootvskip}{0cm}
```

`\procoptfootvskip` and the option vertical skip length added to the footer with the `movepagenumber` option:

```
1918 \newlength{\procoptfootvskip}
```

```
1919 \ifconfproc@movepagenumber \setlength{\procoptfootvskip}{3mm}%
```

```
1920 \else \setlength{\procoptfootvskip}{0mm} \fi
```

`\lhead` The left header is given as:

```
1921 \lhead{\color{\confproc@colorheaders}\proclhead}
```

`\chead` the central header is:

```
1922 \chead{\color{\confproc@colorheaders}\procchead}
```

`\rhead` and the right header is:

```
1923 \rhead{\color{\confproc@colorheaders}\procrhead}
```

`\lfoot` The left footer is also set empty:

```
1924 \lfoot{}
```

`\rfoot` as well as the right footer:

```
1925 \rfoot{}
```

`\proccfoot` The center footer is the page number with option and mandatory vertical spaces:

```
1926 \cfoot{\color{\confproc@colorheaders}\vskip\procfootvskip%
```

```
1927 \vskip\procoptfootvskip\proccfoot}%
```

`\pagestyle` Depending on the value of the `headers` option, we change the default page style:

```
1928 \ifdefined \conf@FancyHeadersExceptPapers
```

```
1929 \pagestyle{fancy}
```

```
1930 \else
```

```
1931 \pagestyle{empty}
```

```
1932 \fi
```

8.7.5 Table of contents layouts

Using the `titletoc` commands, we define the various table of contents layout.

8.7.6 Default

For right numbering:

```
1933 \if@proc@TocNumberingRight
we first set the left margin of papers inserted as sections:
1934 \titlecontents{section}[0em]% left margin
we then set the table of contents spacing between 2 papers:
1935 {\vspace*{0.5mm}}% space between two papers in the TOC
and the filler and page number:
1936 {}%
1937 {}%
1938 {\hfill \hspace*{-2.5em}\makebox[0pt][r]{\contentspage}\hspace*{2.5em}}% filler and page
1939 [\addvspace{0.5mm}]% space after
```

For left numbering:

```
1940 \else%
1941 % \dottedcontents{section}[]{\fillright}{}{1pc}
1942 \titlecontents{section}[2.5em]%
1943 {\vspace*{0.5mm}}%
we set the left shift of page numbers:
1944 {\hspace*{-2.5em}\makebox[0pt][r]{\contentspage}\hspace*{2.5em}}% left shifting page num.
1945 {\hspace*{-2.5em}\makebox[0pt][r]{\contentspage}\hspace*{2.5em}}% idem
1946 {}% filler and page
1947 [\addvspace{0.5mm}]% space after
1948 % \titlecontents{subsection}[2.5em]%
1949 % {\vspace*{0.3em}}%
1950 % {}% left shifting page num.
1951 % {}% idem
1952 % {}% filler and page
1953 % \titlecontents{subsection*}[2.5em]%
1954 % {\vspace*{0.3em}}%
1955 % {}% left shifting page num.
1956 % {}% idem
1957 % {}% filler and page
1958 \fi
```

`\tocmattertocstyle` **At document frontmatter with right numbering**

```
1959 \if@proc@TocNumberingRight
1960 \newcommand{\frontmattertocstyle}{
```

Parts are used for the preamble:

```
1961 \titlecontents{part}[0em]%
1962 {\addvspace{3mm}}%
1963 {\Large\bfseries}%
1964 {\Large\bfseries}%
1965 {}%
1966 [\addvspace{0.5mm}]
```

and chapters for each page for the preamble:

```
1967 \titlecontents{chapter}[0em]%
1968 {\addvspace{2mm}}%
1969 {\large\bfseries\itshape}%
1970 {\large\bfseries\itshape}%
1971 {}%
```

```

1972     [\addvspace{0.5mm}]
1973   }

```

At document frontmatter with left numbering

```

1974 \else
1975   \newcommand{\frontmattertocstyle}{

```

Parts are used for the preamble:

```

1976   \titlecontents{part}[0em]%
1977     {\addvspace{3mm}}%
1978     {\Large\bfseries}%
1979     {\Large\bfseries}%
1980     {}%
1981     [\addvspace{0.5mm}]

```

and chapters for each page for the preamble:

```

1982   \titlecontents{chapter}[0em]%
1983     {\addvspace{2mm}}%
1984     {\large\bfseries\itshape}%
1985     {\large\bfseries\itshape}%
1986     {}%
1987     [\addvspace{0.5mm}]

```

```

1988   }
1989 \fi

```

At document mainmatte

`\mainmattertocstyle` Sections are always used for papers. Chapters are used as sessions when days are used. Parts are used as days, or when sessions of no days are used. The corresponding TOC style or the main matter is then defined for right page numbers in TOC:

```

1990 \if@proc@TocNumberingRight
1991   \newcommand{\mainmattertocstyle}{
1992     \titlecontents{part}[0pt]%
1993       {\addvspace{3mm}}%
1994       {\Large\bfseries}%
1995       {\Large\bfseries}%
1996       {}%
1997       [\addvspace{0.5mm}]
1998     \titlecontents{chapter}[0pt]%
1999       {\addvspace{2mm}}%
2000       {\large\bfseries\itshape}%
2001       {\large\bfseries\itshape}%
2002       {}%
2003       [\addvspace{0.5mm}]
2004   }

```

and for left page numbers in TOC:

```

2005 \else % left TOC page numbers
2006   \newcommand{\mainmattertocstyle}{
2007     \titlecontents{part}[0pt]%
2008       {\addvspace{3mm}}%
2009       {\Large\bfseries}%
2010       {\Large\bfseries}%
2011       {}%
2012       [\addvspace{0.5mm}]
2013     \titlecontents{chapter}[0pt]%
2014       {\addvspace{2mm}}%
2015       {\large\bfseries\itshape}%

```

```

2016     {\large\bfseries\itshape}%
2017     {}}%
2018     [\addvspace{0.5mm}]
2019   }
2020 \fi

```

`npagespreamble` Before redefining the main matter, we define a counter that is used to count the number of pages in the preamble (especially for the pdf³⁰ output data:

```
2021 \newcounter{npagespreamble}
```

`\mainmatter` Hence, we redefine the `\mainmatter` command that does not use anymore this style (it is left to the user to decide whether he wants to use it or not) but indicated the number of pages in the preamble:

New [v0.7]

```

2022 \renewcommand{\mainmatter}{%
2023   \PackageInfo{confproc}{counted \arabic{npagespreamble} pages in the preamble}
2024   \cleardoublepage
2025   \@mainmattertrue
2026   \pagenumbering{arabic}}

```

8.7.7 At document backmatter

`\backmattertocstyle` Sections are used to format/display the general bibliography and index of authors, but they appear as parts in the table of contents, for both right page numbers:

```

2027 \if@proc@TocNumberingRight
2028   \newcommand{\backmattertocstyle}{%
2029     \titlecontents{part}%
2030       [Opt]%
2031       {\addvspace{3mm}}%
2032       {\Large\bfseries}%
2033       {\Large\bfseries}%
2034       {\hfill \hspace*{-2.5em}\contentspage\hspace*{2.5em}}%
2035       [\addvspace{0.5mm}]
2036     \titlecontents{chapter}%
2037       [Opt]%
2038       {\addvspace{2mm}}%
2039       {\large\bfseries\itshape}%
2040       {\large\bfseries\itshape}%
2041       {\hfill \hspace*{-2.5em}\contentspage\hspace*{2.5em}}%
2042       [\addvspace{0.5mm}]
2043   }%

```

and left page numbers:

```

2044 \else
2045   \newcommand{\backmattertocstyle}{%
2046     \titlecontents{part}%
2047       [Opt]%
2048       {\addvspace{3mm}}%
2049       {\makebox[0pt][r]{\contentspage}\hspace*{2.5em}\Large\bfseries}%
2050       {\makebox[0pt][r]{\contentspage}\hspace*{2.5em}\Large\bfseries}%
2051       {}}%
2052     [\addvspace{0.5mm}]
2053     \titlecontents{chapter}%
2054       [Opt]%
2055       {\addvspace{2mm}}%
2056       {\makebox[0pt][r]{\contentspage}\hspace*{2.5em}\large\itshape\bfseries}%

```

³⁰Get pdftk at: <http://www.accesspdf.com/pdftk/>

```

2057     {\makebox[0pt][r]{\contentspage}\hspace*{2.5em}\large\itshape\bfseries}%
2058     }%
2059     [\addvspace{0.5mm}]
2060   }%
2061 \fi

```

`\backmatter` We then redefine the `\backmatter` command and ensure the footer is properly modified:

```

2062 \renewcommand\backmatter{%
2063   \ifopenright \cleardoublepage
2064   \else \clearpage \fi
2065   \@mainmatterfalse
2066   \cfoot{\color{\confproc@colorheaders}\vskip \procfootvskip %
2067     \vskip \procoptfootvskip \proccfoot}}

```

8.7.8 Headers/footers

`\otherpagestyle` The default page style (and corresponding headers and footers) is set for non PDF-inserted pages:

```

2068 \newcommand{\otherpagestyle}{
2069   \ifproc@FancyHeadersExceptPapers\pagestyle{fancy}
2070   \else \pagestyle{empty} \fi}

```

`\otherpagestyle` and for a particular page:

```

2071 \newcommand{\thisotherpagestyle}{
2072   \ifproc@FancyHeadersExceptPapers\thispagestyle{fancy}
2073   \else \thispagestyle{empty} \fi}

```

`\PDFpagestyle` as well as for PDF-inserted pages:

```

2074 \newcommand{\PDFpagestyle}{
2075   \ifproc@FancyHeadersOnPapers\thispagestyle{fancy}
2076   \else\thispagestyle{empty} \fi}

```

`\chapterfont` Using the `sectsty` package, all chapters have the same font in the table of contents:

```

2077 \chapterfont{\thisotherpagestyle}

```

`\clearsingleordoublepage` We define the `\clearsingleordoublepage` command depending if on the document format (one-side or two-side):

```

2078 \newcommand{\clearsingleordoublepage}{
2079   \iffalse\@twoside \clearpage
2080   \else \cleardoublepage \fi}

```

8.7.9 X and Y shifts

`\LaTeXxShift` We now define the X and Y shifts for L^AT_EX (`\LaTeXxShift` and `\LaTeXyShift`) and Word (`\WordxShift`, `\WordyShift`) generated papers as lengths:

```

\LaTeXxShift
\LaTeXyShift
\WordxShift
\WordyShift
2081 \newlength{\LaTeXxShift} \setlength{\LaTeXxShift}{0pt}
2082 \newlength{\LaTeXyShift} \setlength{\LaTeXyShift}{0pt}
2083 \newlength{\WordxShift} \setlength{\WordxShift}{0pt}
2084 \newlength{\WordyShift} \setlength{\WordyShift}{0pt}

```

8.7.10 Paper insertion commands

`\conf@paper@title` We now define (as empty) the commands used to add TOC, bookmark and bib data to inserted PDF papers, *i.e.* the paper title:

```

2085 \newcommand{\conf@paper@title}{}

```

`\conf@paper@authors` the paper authors:
2086 `\newcommand{\conf@paper@authors}{}`

`\conf@paper@index` the commands for insertion in the index:
2087 `\newcommand{\conf@paper@index}{}`

`\conf@paper@ref` the paper reference, *i.e.* a tag (*e.g.* the file name, or the submission number):
2088 `\newcommand{\conf@paper@ref}{}`

`\conf@paper@pagenum` the number of pages:
2089 `\newcommand{\conf@paper@pagenum}{}`

`\conf@paper@cite` the bibliographic references (for the general bibliography):
2090 `\newcommand{\conf@paper@cite}{}`

`\papertitlestyle` the style for the title:
2091 `\newcommand{\papertitlestyle}{}`

`\paperauthorstyle` and finally the style for both the list of authors and the text between the title and the list of authors:
2092 `\newcommand{\paperauthorstyle}{\texorpdfstring{\newline\itshape}{\break}}`

`npages` A new counter `npages` is added, for the number of pages of a paper:
2093 `\newcounter{npages}`

`\proctocitleauthor` The `\proctocitleauthor` command defines the style for title/author entry in the table of contents using the style `\papertitlestyle` for the paper with title `\papertitle` and the style `\paperauthorstyle` for the paper with authors `\paperauthors` :
2094 `\newcommand{\proctocitleauthor}[2]{%`
We chose to insert both the paper title and the list of authors in the table of contents,
2095 `\texorpdfstring{\papertitlestyle #1}{\paperauthorstyle #2}}%`
whereas only the title is inserted as a section in the bookmark.
2096 `{\papertitlestyle #1}}`

Then, each author will be inserted as a subsection in the `\procinsertpaper` command.

8.7.11 Table of contents insertion

`\tableofcontents` We redefine the usual `\tableofcontents` command that switches to the corresponding section style for insertion in the table of contents:
2097 `\renewcommand\tableofcontents{%`
clears a single or double page according to the one/two-sided page format:
2098 `\clearsingleordoublepage`
adds the conference program name to the PDF bookmark:
2099 `\pdfbookmark[0]{\contentsname}{contents}`
switches to one-column if needed:
2100 `\iftwocolumn \@restonecoltrue\onecolumn`
2101 `\else \@restonecolfalse \fi`
inserts the table of contents name as a starred section:
2102 `\section*{\contentsname}%`
inserts the table of contents itself:
2103 `\starttoc{toc}%`

restores the two-column mode if any:

```
2104 \if@restonecol\twocolumn\fi
```

and clears a single or double page according to the one/two-sided page format:

```
2105 \clearsingleordoublepage}
```

8.7.12 Organize the program by days or sessions

`\procdays` The `\procdays` command inserts the day given as argument in the table of contents:

```
2106 \newcommand{\procdays}[1]{%
```

```
2107 \phantomsection \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{#1}}
```

`\session` The `\session` command adds a session to the table of contents:

```
2108 \newcommand{\session}[1]{%
```

```
2109 \phantomsection \addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{#1}}
```

8.7.13 Paper switch

`\paperswitch` The `\paperswitch` command will be redefined in the `expapersswitch.tex` file, containing information about all papers. It is therefore declared empty:

```
2110 \newcommand{\paperswitch}{}}
```

8.7.14 Modifying the bibliography style

`\bibhang` We first set the `\bibhang` length:

```
2111 \setlength{\bibhang}{0.5em} %
```

`\thebibliography` We then redefine the `\thebibliography` environment, for proper use and insertion of the new section title in the table of contents:

```
2112 \if@proc@BibNone
```

```
2113 \renewenvironment{thebibliography}[1]{%
```

```
2114 \PackageInfo{confproc}{ignoring #1 biblio file ('bib=None' option)}}}
```

```
2115 \else
```

```
2116 \renewenvironment{thebibliography}[1]{%
```

```
2117 \ifconfproc@twocolbib \twocolumn \fi
```

```
2118 \ifdefined\conf@BibMerge \nocite{*}
```

```
2119 \else \clearsingleordoublepage \fi%
```

```
2120 \section*{\bibname}%
```

```
2121 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{\bibname}
```

```
2122 \@mkboth{\MakeUppercase\bibname}{\MakeUppercase\bibname}%
```

```
2123 \procbibintro
```

```
2124 \list{\@biblabel{\@arabic\c@enumiv}}%
```

```
2125 {\settowidth\labelwidth{\@biblabel{#1}}%
```

```
2126 \leftmargin\labelwidth
```

```
2127 \advance\leftmargin\labelsep
```

```
2128 \@openbib@code
```

```
2129 \usecounter{enumiv}%
```

```
2130 \let\p@enumiv\@empty
```

```
2131 \renewcommand\theenumiv{\@arabic\c@enumiv}}%
```

```
2132 \sloppy
```

```
2133 \clubpenalty4000
```

```
2134 \@clubpenalty \clubpenalty
```

```
2135 \widowpenalty4000%
```

```
2136 \sfcode'\.\@m}
```

```
2137 {\def\@noitemerr
```

```
2138 {\@latex@warning{Empty 'thebibliography' environment}}%
```

```

2139     \endlist
2140     \setlength{\labelsep}{0em}
2141     \setlength{\itemindent}{-\bibhang}
2142     \setlength{\leftmargin}{\bibhang}
2143 \fi

```

`\newblock` We redefine the `\newblock` command to reduce the space between bib items:

```

2144 \renewcommand\newblock{\hskip 0em plus 0.0em minus .07em}

```

8.7.15 General bibliography introduction

`\procbibintro` The `\procbibintro` cmd defaults the introductory paragraph of the full bibliography:

```

2145 \newcommand{\procbibintro}{\it ~~~This bibliography is a compilation
2146 of all bibliographic references from each paper. Page numbers that
2147 appear at the end of each entry link to the bibliography sections that
2148 include it. Please click on the URL or on the page number to access
2149 the linked item.}}

```

8.7.16 Index insertion

`\insertindex` The `\insertindex` cmd defines the index insertion (it may later be hidden in a proper redefinition of the `\theindex` command):

```

2150 \newcommand{\insertindex}{

```

We first clear the page, so that two-side documents start on a right (odd) page:

```

2151 \clearsingleordoublepage

```

We then back to the 1-column format, in case one adds text before the index:

```

2152 \onecolumn

```

We then include a phantom section and a link to bookmark (do not remove, as this dirty hack provides a valid pointer to the index):

```

2153 % \section*{\addcontentsline{toc}{part}{\bibname} \bibname}%
2154 \section*{~~}%
2155 \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{\indexname}%

```

The index of authors may have no header/footer, in the case it is a single (and last) page that is printed inside the cover (as we did for the paperback version of the DAFx-06 proceedings):

```

2156 \renewcommand{\prochead}{}%
2157 \renewcommand{\proccfoot}{}%

```

We then print the index:

```

2158 \printindex}

```

and we are done for the index of authors, as well as for the whole `confproc` class!

8.7.17 Layout design: show the margin lines

`\procmarginlines` We define a `\procmarginlines` command that defines the margin layout under the form of a tabular for `showmarginlines=true`:

```

2159 \ifconfproc@showmarginlines
2160 \PackageInfo{confproc}{drawing margin lines' command (with a table)}%
2161 \pagestyle{fancyplain}
2162 \renewcommand{\headrulewidth}{0.0pt}
2163 % \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{0.0pt}
2164 \newcommand{\procmarginlines}{
2165     \renewcommand{\footrulewidth}{0.4pt}
2166     \noindent

```

First adjust the initial vertical space:

```
2167 \vspace*{7mm} % adjusting vertical initial space
```

A table is used to draw the vertical lines (blue color):

```
2168 \begin{table}[h!] % table for vertical lines
2169 \centering
2170 \color{blue}
```

The spacing between columns corresponds to the spacing between vertical lines:

```
2171 \begin{tabular}{|@{}p{3.3in}@{}|@{}p{0.3in}@{}|@{}p{3.3in}@{}|} % spacing between columns
```

The upper horizontal line is added:

```
2172 \hline % upper horizontal line
```

Add empty lines and a vertical space to fill in the table; this space is less than a page height:

```
2173 ~~~~~ & ~ & ~~~~~\
2174 \vspace*{7.5in} % less than a page height
2175 ~~~~~ & ~ & ~~~~~\
2176 \end{tabular}
2177 \end{table}
2178 }
```

the same command is otherwise defined as an empty command if `showmarginlines=false`:

```
2179 \else
2180 \newcommand{\procmarginlines}{}
2181 \PackageInfo{confproc}{no margin lines}%
2182 \fi
```

8.7.18 paper insertion

We first define a path to the papers folder:

```
\PAPERPATH
```

```
2183 \newcommand{\PAPERPATH}{}
```

`\confemptypercite` We then define the `\confemptypercite` command to insert fake papers' last page (used by the `papers=empty` option) with their citations:

```
2184 \newcommand{\confemptypercite}[2]{%
2185 \vspace*{0.3\textheight}%
2186 \begin{flushleft}
2187 \begin{tabular}{lp{0.7\textwidth}}
2188 \Large [Title] & \Large \conf@papertitle\\
2189 & \vspace*{0.5cm}\\
2190 \Large [Author(s)] & \Large \conf@paperauthor\\
2191 & \vspace*{0.5cm}\\
2192 \Large [File name] & \Large \url{\PAPERPATH #2}\\
2193 & \vspace*{0.5cm}\\
2194 \if@proc@BibNone
2195 \Large [Citation(s)] & \Large [disabled by ‘bib=None’ option]\\
2196 & \vspace*{2cm}\\
2197 \else
2198 \Large [Citation(s)] & \Large \confcite{\conf@cite}\\
2199 & \vspace*{2cm}\\
2200 \fi
2201 & \textbf{\Huge Page #1}\\
2202 \end{tabular}
2203 \end{flushleft}
2204 }
```

conf@pages We now define a counter that contains this paper's last page number:

```
2205 \newcounter{conf@pages}
```

\confemptypaper We then define the \confemptypaper command to insert fake papers (used by the `papers=empty` option) and that makes use of this counter to point to the citation page if any:

```
2206 \newcommand{\confemptypaper}[2]{%
2207   \vspace*{0.3\textheight}%
2208   \begin{flushleft}
2209     \begin{tabular}[lp{0.7\textwidth}]
2210       \Large [Title] & \Large \conf@papertitle\\
2211       & \vspace*{0.5cm}\\
2212       \Large [Author(s)] & \Large \conf@paperauthor\\
2213       & \vspace*{0.5cm}\\
2214       \Large [File name] & \Large \url{\PAPERPATH #2}\\
2215       & \vspace*{0.5cm}\\
2216       \if@proc@BibNone
2217         \Large [Citation(s)] & \Large [disabled by ‘bib=none’ option]\\
2218         & \vspace*{2cm}\\
2219       \else
2220         \Large [Citation(s)] & \Large [see page \theconf@pages{} of this paper]\\
2221         & \vspace*{2cm}\\
2222       \fi
2223       & \textbf{\Huge Page #1}\\
2224     \end{tabular}
2225   \end{flushleft}
2226 }
```

\procpaper ^{New [v0.7]} We now come to the paper insertion \procpaper command, one of the most important command of the whole class. It has been redefined from \procinsertpaper but with key-values options, as suggested by Andreas Matthias. We first define the command parameters:

```
2227 %%%% begin key-value option management for \procpaper{} command %%%%
2228 \newlength{\conf@xshift}
2229 \newlength{\conf@yshift}
2230 \newcounter{conf@switch}
2231 \newcounter{conf@firstpage}
2232 \newcounter{conf@lastpage}
2233 \newcommand{\conf@pagecmd}{}
2234 \newcommand{\conf@tmpauthorlist}{}
2235 \newcommand{\conf@tmptitle}{}

```

\confstylecheckauthor We also define the style of the author list when overlaid on the 1st page:

```
2236 \newcommand{\confstylecheckauthor}{}

```

\confstylechecktitle as well as the style of the title when overlaid on the 1st page:

```
2237 \newcommand{\confstylechecktitle}{}

```

\confstylechecktitle and a temporary number of pages:

```
2238 \newcounter{locnpages}%

```

we can now define the \procpaper command with keyval syntax:

```
2239 \def\procpaper{\@ifnextchar[{\@procpaper}{\@procpaper[]}}

```

Its default values are set only if the current paper has to be inserted:

```
2240 \def\@procpaper[#1]#2{%
2241   \ifthenelse{\equal{\confproc@paperselec}{all}}{\or\equal{\confproc@paperselec}{#2}}
2242   {\setlength{\conf@xshift}{0cm}

```

```

2243 \setlength{\conf@yshift}{0cm}
2244 \setcounter{conf@pages}{1}
2245 \setcounter{conf@switch}{1}
2246 \def\conf@papertitle{Default paper title}
2247 \def\conf@paperauthor{Default paper author list}
2248 \def\conf@index{}
2249 \def\conf@cite{}
2250 \def\conf@bookmark{} %\pdfbookmark[2]{Default paper author 1}{p_XXX.author1}}

```

and key-values are finally set:

```
2251 \setkeys{ppaper}{#1}
```

The horizontal offset is set depending on the binding:

```

2252 \iffalse\@twoside \addtolength{\conf@xshift}{0cm}
2253 \else \addtolength{\conf@xshift}{\proc@binding} \fi
2254

```

We can now insert the PDF paper, depending on the `paper` and `bib` options, as well as depending on its number of pages. First in the case `paper=empty`:

```

2255 \if@proc@ReplacePDFs
2256   \immediate\write\npagesfile {file #2.pdf has \theconf@pages \space pages}
2257   \clearsingleordoublepage
2258   \setcounter{conf@firstpage}{\thenpagespreamble+\thepage}
2259   \setcounter{conf@lastpage}{\thenpagespreamble+\thepage+
2260     \theconf@pages-1}
2261
2262   \phantomsection
2263   \addcontentsline{toc}{section}{\proctocitleauthor{\conf@papertitle}%
2264     {\conf@paperauthor}}
2265   \ifnum\theconf@pages=0
2266     \typeout{confproc: Error, you asked for an empty paper}
2267     \typeout{confproc: #2.pdf}
2268     \fi
2269   \ifnum\theconf@pages=1
2270     \confemptypapercite{1}{#2.pdf} \conf@bookmark \conf@index{}%
2271     \fi
2272   \ifnum\theconf@pages=2
2273     \confemptypaper{1}{#2.pdf} \conf@bookmark \conf@index{}%
2274     \newpage \confemptypapercite{2}{#2.pdf}
2275     \fi
2276   \ifnum\theconf@pages>2
2277     \confemptypaper{1}{#2.pdf} \conf@bookmark \conf@index{}%
2278     \setcounter{locnpages}{2}
2279     \ifthenelse{\thelocnpages<\theconf@pages}%
2280       {\typeout{smaller}}%
2281       {\typeout{bigger}}
2282     \whiledo{\value{locnpages}<\value{conf@pages}}{%
2283       \newpage \confemptypaper{\thelocnpages}{#2.pdf}%
2284       \addtocounter{locnpages}{1}}
2285     \newpage \confemptypapercite{\theconf@pages}{#2.pdf}
2286     \fi

```

we finally set the counter for the last page number of the current empty paper:

```
2287 \setcounter{conf@lastpage}{\thenpagespreamble+\thepage}
```

Second, in the case `paper=draft` | `final` | `countpages`:

```

2288 \else
2289   \setcounter{conf@firstpage}{\thenpagespreamble+\thepage}
2290   \conf@index{}%

```

```

2291 \ifconfproc@showpapernumber
2292 \cfoot{\color{\confproc@colorheaders}\vskip \procfootvskip %
2293 \vskip \procoptfootvskip \proccfoot\
2294 \color{\confproc@colorheaders}[paper \theconf@switch{}]}{}
2295 % \else
2296 % % TODO: DO WE DO ANYTHING OTHERWISE?
2297 \fi
2298 \ifconfproc@checktitle
2299 \renewcommand{\conf@tmptitle}{\color{blue}%
2300 \confstylechecktitle\conf@papertitle}}
2301 \else
2302 \renewcommand{\conf@tmptitle}{}
2303 \fi
2304 \ifconfproc@checkauthor
2305 \renewcommand{\conf@tmpauthorlist}{\color{blue}%
2306 \confstylecheckauthor\conf@paperauthor}}
2307 \else
2308 \renewcommand{\conf@tmpauthorlist}{}
2309 \fi
2310 \renewcommand{\conf@pagecmd}{\conf@tmptitle\ \conf@tmpauthorlist}
2311

```

In the particular case where `paper=countpages`, the user-indicated number of pages is ignored:

```

2312 \if@proc@IncludeFullPDFs % include all pages in order to count!!!
2313 \includepdf[noautoscale,offset=\conf@xshift{} \conf@yshift{},pages=1,%
2314 linktodoc,linkname=\PAPERPATH #2.pdf,%
2315 addtotoc={1, section, 1, %
2316 \proctocitleauthor{\conf@papertitle}{\conf@paperauthor},%
2317 \theconf@switch},%
2318 pagecommand = {\conf@pagecmd\procmarginlines %
2319 \conf@bookmark \PDFpagestyle}%
2320 ]{\PAPERPATH #2.pdf}%
2321 \includepdf[noautoscale,offset=\conf@xshift{} \conf@yshift{},pages=2-,%
2322 linktodoc,linkname=\PAPERPATH #2.pdf,%
2323 pagecommand = {\procmarginlines \PDFpagestyle}%
2324 ]{\PAPERPATH #2.pdf}%

```

Otherwise, we include either a 1-page paper:

```

2325 \else
2326 \ifnum\theconf@npages=1 % 1-page paper
2327 \if@proc@verbose
2328 \typeout{confproc: 1-page long paper}
2329 \fi
2330 \if@proc@BibNone
2331 \includepdf[noautoscale,offset=\conf@xshift{} \conf@yshift{},%
2332 pages=1,linktodoc,linkname=\PAPERPATH #2.pdf,%
2333 addtotoc={1, section, 1, %
2334 \proctocitleauthor{\conf@papertitle}{\conf@paperauthor},%
2335 \theconf@switch},%
2336 pagecommand = {\conf@pagecmd\procmarginlines %
2337 \conf@bookmark \PDFpagestyle}%
2338 ]{\PAPERPATH #2.pdf}%
2339 \else
2340 \includepdf[noautoscale,offset=\conf@xshift{} \conf@yshift{},%
2341 pages=1,linktodoc,linkname=\PAPERPATH #2.pdf,%
2342 addtotoc={1, section, 1,%
2343 \proctocitleauthor{\conf@papertitle}{\conf@paperauthor},%
2344 \theconf@switch},%

```

```

2345     pagecommand = {\conf@pagecmd\procmarginlines %
2346     \conf@bookmark \PDFpagestyle\vspace*{-1cm}\confcite{\conf@cite}}%
2347     ]{\PAPERPATH #2.pdf}%
2348     \fi
2349     \else
a 2-pages paper:
2350     \ifnum\theconf@pages=2 % 2-pages paper
2351     \if@proc@verbose\typeout{confproc: 2-page long paper}\fi
2352     \if@proc@BibNone
2353     \includepdf[noautoscale,offset=\conf@xshift{} \conf@yshift{},%
2354     pages=1,linktodoc,linkname=\PAPERPATH #2.pdf,%
2355     addtotoc={1, section, 1, %
2356     \proctocitleauthor{\conf@papertitle}{\conf@paperauthor},%
2357     \theconf@switch},%
2358     pagecommand = {\conf@pagecmd\procmarginlines \conf@bookmark %
2359     \PDFpagestyle}%
2360     ]{\PAPERPATH #2.pdf}%
2361     \includepdf[noautoscale,offset=\conf@xshift{} \conf@yshift{},%
2362     pages=2,linktodoc,linkname=\PAPERPATH #2.pdf,%
2363     pagecommand = {\procmarginlines \PDFpagestyle}%
2364     ]{\PAPERPATH #2.pdf}%
2365     \else
2366     \includepdf[noautoscale,offset=\conf@xshift{} \conf@yshift{},%
2367     pages=1,linktodoc,linkname=\PAPERPATH #2.pdf,%
2368     addtotoc={1, section, 1, %
2369     \proctocitleauthor{\conf@papertitle}{\conf@paperauthor},%
2370     \theconf@switch},%
2371     pagecommand = {\conf@pagecmd\procmarginlines \conf@bookmark %
2372     \PDFpagestyle\vspace*{-1cm}\confcite{\conf@cite}}%
2373     ]{\PAPERPATH #2.pdf}%
2374     \includepdf[noautoscale,offset=\conf@xshift{} \conf@yshift{},%
2375     pages=2,linktodoc,linkname=\PAPERPATH #2.pdf,%
2376     pagecommand = {\procmarginlines %
2377     \PDFpagestyle\vspace*{-2cm}\confcite{\conf@cite}}%
2378     ]{\PAPERPATH #2.pdf}%
2379     \fi
or a 3 (and more)-pages paper:
2380     \else % 3 pages and more
2381     \includepdf[noautoscale,offset=\conf@xshift{} \conf@yshift{},%
2382     pages=1,%
2383     linktodoc,linkname=\PAPERPATH #2.pdf,%
2384     addtotoc={1, section, 1, %
2385     \proctocitleauthor{\conf@papertitle}{\conf@paperauthor},%
2386     \theconf@switch},%
2387     pagecommand = {\conf@pagecmd\procmarginlines %
2388     \conf@bookmark \PDFpagestyle}%
2389     ]{\PAPERPATH #2.pdf}%
2390     \ifdefined\conf@BibMerge%
2391     \includepdf[noautoscale,offset=\conf@xshift{} \conf@yshift{},%
2392     pages=\theconf@pages,linktodoc,linkname=\PAPERPATH #2.pdf,%
2393     pagecommand = {\procmarginlines %
2394     \PDFpagestyle\vspace*{-2cm}\confcite{\conf@cite}}%
2395     ]{\PAPERPATH #2.pdf}%
2396     \PDFpagestyle{}%
2397     \if@proc@verbose\typeout{confproc: bibliography insertion only}\fi
2398     \else

```

```

2399         \addtocounter{conf@npages}{-1}
2400         \includepdf[noautoscale,offset=\conf@xshift{} \conf@yshift{},%
2401             pages=2-\theconf@npages,linktodoc,linkname=\PAPERPATH #2.pdf,%
2402             pagecommand = {\procmarginlines \PDFpagestyle}%
2403             ]{\PAPERPATH #2.pdf}%
2404         \PDFpagestyle{}%
2405         \addtocounter{conf@npages}{1}
2406         \if@proc@BibNone
2407             \includepdf[noautoscale,offset=\conf@xshift{} \conf@yshift{},%
2408                 pages=\theconf@npages,linktodoc,linkname=\PAPERPATH #2.pdf,%
2409                 pagecommand = {\procmarginlines \PDFpagestyle}%
2410                 ]{\PAPERPATH #2.pdf}%
2411         \else
2412             \includepdf[noautoscale,offset=\conf@xshift{} \conf@yshift{},%
2413                 pages=\theconf@npages,linktodoc,linkname=\PAPERPATH #2.pdf,%
2414                 pagecommand = {\procmarginlines %
2415                     \PDFpagestyle\vspace*{-2cm}\confcite{\conf@cite}}%
2416                 ]{\PAPERPATH #2.pdf}%
2417         \fi
2418     \fi
2419 \fi
2420 \fi
2421 \if@proc@verbose
2422     \typeout{confproc: partial paper insertion %
2423         (last page=bib items)}
2424 \fi
2425 \fi

```

we compute the number of pages and write it to the file that counts the number of pages:

```

2426     \setcounter{conf@lastpage}{\thenpagespreamble+\thepage-1}
2427     \setcounter{conf@npages}{\theconf@lastpage}
2428     \addtocounter{conf@npages}{- \theconf@firstpage}
2429     \immediate\write\npagesfile{file #2.pdf has \theconf@npages \space pages}

```

and finally turn the page for next paper or section:

```

2430     \newpage
2431     \ifconfproc@twosidepapers \cleardoublepage
2432     \else \clearpage \fi
2433 \fi

```

Let us also give some feedback to the user when `verbose=true`:

```

2434 \if@proc@verbose
2435     \typeout{_____ debug: insert paper _____}
2436     \typeout{confproc/file: #2.pdf (\theconf@npages \space pages)}
2437     \typeout{confproc/title: \conf@papertitle}
2438     \typeout{confproc/authors: \conf@paperauthor}
2439     \typeout{confproc/index: \conf@index}
2440     \typeout{confproc/shift: (\the\conf@xshift, \the\conf@yshift)}
2441     \typeout{confproc/citations: \conf@cite}
2442     \typeout{confproc/bookmarks: \conf@bookmark}
2443     \typeout{confproc/switch ID: \theconf@switch}
2444     \typeout{_____}
2445 \fi
2446 % \end{macrocode}
2447 % We then append the current paper's data to the \package{pdftk}\footnote{Get \package{pdftk}
2448 % \begin{macrocode}
2449 \ifconfproc@pdftk
2450 % \immediate\write\pdftkinfoall {_____}

```

```

2451 %%-- pdftk version: !!! does not work with PDF v > 1.3
2452 %% \immediate\write\pdftkinfoall{pdftk A=${PDFFILE} cat A\arabic{conf@firstpage}-\arabic{conf@lastpage}.pdf}
2453 %%-- Ghostscript version: ok with PDF v = 1.4
2454 \immediate\write\pdftkinfoall{gs -dBATCH -dNOPAUSE -q -sDEVICE=pdfwrite -dFirstPage=\arabic{conf@firstpage}-\arabic{conf@lastpage}.pdf}
2455

```

Such text is also written to individual files in the selected folder:

```

2456 %%-- pdftk version: !!! does not work with PDF v > 1.3
2457 %% \immediate\write\pdftkinfoall{pdftk A=${PDFFILE} cat A\arabic{conf@firstpage}-\arabic{conf@lastpage}.pdf}
2458 %%-- Ghostscript version: ok with PDF v = 1.4
2459 \immediate\openout\pdftkinfofile=\confproc@pdftkfolder/#2.pdftk
2460 \immediate\write\pdftkinfofile {InfoKey: Title}
2461 \immediate\write\pdftkinfofile {InfoValue: \conf@papertitle}
2462 \immediate\write\pdftkinfofile {InfoKey: Author}
2463 \immediate\write\pdftkinfofile {InfoValue: \conf@paperauthor}
2464 \immediate\write\pdftkinfofile {InfoKey: Subject}
2465 \immediate\write\pdftkinfofile {InfoValue: \confproc@pdftksubject}
2466 \immediate\write\pdftkinfofile {InfoKey: Producer}
2467 \immediate\write\pdftkinfofile {InfoValue: \confproc@pdftkproducer}
2468 \immediate\write\pdftkinfofile {InfoKey: Creator}
2469 \immediate\write\pdftkinfofile {InfoValue: \confproc@pdftkcreator}
2470 \immediate\closeout\pdftkinfofile

```

Finally, this text is also written to the log when `verbose=true`:

```

2471 \ifconfproc@verbose
2472 \typeout{_____}
2473 \typeout{pdftk A=${PDFFILE} cat A\arabic{conf@firstpage}-\arabic{conf@lastpage}.pdf output ${PDFFILE}}
2474 \typeout{gs -dBATCH -dNOPAUSE -q -sDEVICE=pdfwrite -dFirstPage=\arabic{conf@firstpage}-\arabic{conf@lastpage}.pdf}
2475 % \typeout{pdftk ${SPPATH}/#2.pdf update_info ${INPATH}/#2.info output ${INPATH}/#2.pdf}
2476 \typeout{InfoName: #2.info}
2477 \typeout{InfoKey: Title}
2478 \typeout{InfoValue: \conf@papertitle}
2479 \typeout{InfoKey: Author}
2480 \typeout{InfoValue: \conf@paperauthor}
2481 \typeout{InfoKey: Subject}
2482 \typeout{InfoValue: \confproc@pdftksubject}
2483 \typeout{InfoKey: Producer}
2484 \typeout{InfoValue: \confproc@pdftkproducer}
2485 \typeout{InfoKey: Creator}
2486 \typeout{InfoValue: \confproc@pdftkcreator}
2487 \typeout{InfoEnd}
2488 \fi
2489 \fi
2490 }{}
2491 }}

```

We finally set the key-values using the pre-defined internal commands:

```

2492 \define@key{ppaper}{xshift}{\setlength{\conf@xshift}{#1}}
2493 \define@key{ppaper}{yshift}{\setlength{\conf@yshift}{#1}}
2494 \define@key{ppaper}{npages}{\setcounter{conf@npages}{#1}}
2495 \define@key{ppaper}{switch}{\setcounter{conf@switch}{#1}}
2496 \define@key{ppaper}{title}{\def\conf@papertitle{#1}}
2497 \define@key{ppaper}{author}{\def\conf@paperauthor{#1}}
2498 \define@key{ppaper}{index}{\def\conf@index{#1}}
2499 \define@key{ppaper}{cite}{\def\conf@cite{#1}}
2500 \define@key{ppaper}{bookmark}{\def\conf@bookmark{#1}}
2501 %%% end key-value option management for \procpaper{} command %%%

```

`\procinsertpaper` We also redefine its pre-version 0.6 using this latest function, for (partial) backward compatibility:

```
2502 \newcommand{\procinsertpaper}[9]{%
```

It has the following 9 arguments: i) X (=horizontal) and Y (=vertical) shifts (with a space in between), ii) number of pages, iii) a reference, iv) the title, v) the list of authors, vi) the index entries, vii) the citations for the general bibliography, viii) the PDF file name and ix) the bookmark entries for the authors. Note that the horizontal and vertical shifts are no more preserved, so please seriously consider using the latest `\procpaper` command.

```
2503 \PackageWarning{confproc}{!!! '\procinsertpaper' cmd is obsolete (v0.5) %
2504 and does not preserve PDFs' horizontal and vertical shifts, nor general %
2505 bib items. Please use the '\procpaper' command instead.}
2506 \procpaper[title={#4},author={#5},npages=#2,index={#6},cite={#7},%
2507 bookmark={#9}]{#8}}
```

8.8 Load configuration

Input a local configuration file (`confproc.cfg`), if it exists.

```
2508 \InputIfFileExists{confproc.cfg}
2509 {\typeout{*****~^J%
2510 * Local config file confproc.cfg used *~^J%
2511 *****}
2512 }{}%
2513 </package>
```

References

- [1] Scott Pakin. How to Package Your L^AT_EX Package. CTAN: info/dtxut/. November 2004. Cited page 4
- [2] The L^AT_EX3 Project. L^AT_EX2_ε for class and package writers. CTAN: macros/latex/base/cls.dtx. March 1999. Cited page 4
- [3] Frank Mittelbach, Denys Duchier, Johannes Braams, Marcin Woliński, and Mark Wooding. The DocStrip program. CTAN: macros/latex/base/docstrip.dtx. March 1999. Cited page 4
- [4] The L^AT_EX3 Project. The L^AT_EX Project Public License. URL: www.latex-project.org/lppl.txt. September 1999. Cited page 91
- [5] Eoin Brazil. Creating Conference Proceedings: Tips And Tricks From The Trenches. UL-IDC-02-03. URL: richie.idc.ul.ie/eoin/research/UL-IDC-02-03.pdf. Interactive Design Centre, University of Limerick, 2002. Cited page 4
- [6] SLAC. eConf: Full-Text Proceeding Instructions and Templates. URL: www.slac.stanford.edu/econf/editors/fulltext-template/instructions.html. Retrieved on Sept. 2007. Cited page 5
- [7] American Mathematical Society. Guide to AMS Editor's package. URL: www.ams.org/authors/editpkg.html. Retrieved on Sept. 2007. Cited page 5
- [8] Adobe systems Inc. Acrobat Professional. URL: www.adobe.com/products/acrobatpro/ Retrieved on Sept. 2007. Cited page 4
- [9] Peter Wilson. The combine class and the combinat, combnat and combcite packages CTAN: macros/latex/contrib/combine/. March 2004. Cited page 4
- [10] Sebastian Rahtz and Heiko Oberdiek. The hyperref package. CTAN: macros/latex/contrib/hyperref/. September 2006. Cited page 4, 5, 6, 12, 25, 26
- [11] Andreas Matthias. The pdfpages package. CTAN: macros/latex/contrib/pdfpages/. 2004. Cited page 4, 5

- [12] Heiko Oberdiek. The `kvoptions` package. CTAN: [macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/kvoptions.pdf](http://www.ctan.org/ctan/macros/latex/contrib/oberdiek/kvoptions.pdf). July 2009. Cited page 92
- [13] Joseph Wright and Christian Feuersänger. Implementing key–value input: An introduction. 1st draft: www.texdev.net/wp-content/uploads/2009/03/keyval.pdf. Vol. 30, Number 1, pp.110–122, 2009. Cited page 92
- [14] Vincent Verfaillie. How to make your own proceedings for another conference? URL: www.dafx.ca/dafx06_proceedings_diy.html. October 2006. Cited page 4
- [15] Vincent Verfaillie. Report on the making of the DAFx-06 proceedings. URL: www.dafx.ca/proceedings/report.pdf. MUMT-SPCL-07-01 report, McGill University, March 2007. Cited page 4
- [16] Vincent Verfaillie. A new package for conference proceedings. The PracTeX Journal, Volume 4. URL: www.tug.org/pracjourn/2007-4/verfaillie/verfaillie.pdf. November 2007. Cited page 10

Index

Numbers written in *italic* refer to the page where the corresponding entry is described; numbers underlined refer to the code line of the definition; numbers in *roman* refer to the code lines where the entry is used.

Symbols

<code>\\$</code>	1303	<code>_</code>	789
<code>\&</code>	539, 555		
<code>\@proc@BibNonefalse</code>	1648, 1654, 1660		A
<code>\@proc@BibNonetrue</code>	1663	<code>\author</code>	24, <u>133</u> , <u>137</u> , <u>294</u>
<code>\@proc@BibRemoveCiteHdrfalse</code> ...	1650, 1656		B
<code>\@proc@BibRemoveCiteHdrtrue</code>	1661	<code>\backmatter</code>	81, <u>223</u> , <u>431</u> , <u>2062</u>
<code>\@proc@FancyHeadersExceptPapersfalse</code> .	1621, 1626	<code>\backmattertocstyle</code>	224, <u>432</u> , <u>2027</u>
<code>\@proc@FancyHeadersExceptPaperstrue</code> .	1631, 1636	<code>\bib</code>	<u>1511</u>
<code>\@proc@FancyHeadersOnPapersfalse</code>	1620, 1630	<code>\bibhang</code>	<u>2111</u>
<code>\@proc@FancyHeadersOnPaperstrue</code> 1625, 1635		<code>\bibliography</code>	435
<code>\@proc@IncludeFullPDFsfalse</code>	1577, 1585, 1593, 1608	<code>\bibliographystyle</code>	433, 434
<code>\@proc@IncludeFullPDFstrue</code>	1602	<code>\bibname</code>	<u>145</u> , <u>299</u> , <u>1904</u> , 2120–2122, 2153
<code>\@proc@IncludePDFsfalse</code> ..	1578, 1586, 1603	<code>\BIBPATH</code>	<u>304</u> , 305
<code>\@proc@IncludePDFstrue</code>	1594, 1609	<code>\binding</code>	<u>1509</u>
<code>\@proc@ReplacePDFsfalse</code>	1584, 1592, 1601, 1607		C
<code>\@proc@ReplacePDFstrue</code>	1576	<code>\cfoot</code>	1926, 2066, 2292
<code>\@proc@TocNumberingRightfalse</code>	1679	<code>\chapterfont</code>	<u>2077</u>
<code>\@proc@TocNumberingRighttrue</code> ...	1683, 1686	<code>\chead</code>	<u>1922</u>
<code>\@proc@letterpaperfalse</code>	1492	<code>\checkauthor</code>	<u>1521</u>
<code>\@proc@letterpapertrue</code>	1483	<code>\checktitle</code>	<u>1520</u>
<code>\@proc@verbosefalse</code>	1713, 1720	<code>\cite</code>	1673
<code>\@proc@verbosetrue</code>	1715	<code>\clearsingleordoublepage</code>	<u>359</u> , 387, <u>2078</u> , 2098, 2105, 2119, 2151, 2257
<code>\@procpaper</code>	2239, 2240	<code>\color</code>	16–18, 174, 178, 1024, 1907, 1911, 1921–1923, 1926, 2066, 2170, 2292, 2294, 2299, 2305
<code>\{</code>	1306, 1314	<code>\colorheaders</code>	<u>1522</u>
<code>\}</code>	1307, 1314	<code>\conf@bookmark</code> 2250, 2270, 2273, 2277, 2319, 2337, 2346, 2358, 2371, 2388, 2442, 2500	
<code>\^</code>	74–77, 216–219, 470–473, 477, 479, 857, 860, 1280	<code>\conf@cite</code>	2198, 2249, 2346, 2372, 2377, 2394, 2415, 2441, 2499
<code>\~</code>	74, 76, 216, 218, 470, 472, 477, 859		

<code>\conf@index</code>	2248, 2270, 2273, 2277, 2290, 2439, 2498		
<code>\conf@npages</code>	2205		
<code>\conf@pagecmd</code>	2233,		
	2310, 2318, 2336, 2345, 2358, 2371, 2387		
<code>\conf@paper@authors</code>	2086		
<code>\conf@paper@cite</code>	2090		
<code>\conf@paper@index</code>	2087		
<code>\conf@paper@pagenum</code>	2089		
<code>\conf@paper@ref</code>	2088		
<code>\conf@paper@title</code>	2085		
<code>\conf@paperauthor</code>	2190, 2212,		
	2247, 2264, 2306, 2316, 2334, 2343,		
	2356, 2369, 2385, 2438, 2463, 2480, 2497		
<code>\conf@papertitle</code>	2188, 2210,		
	2246, 2263, 2300, 2316, 2334, 2343,		
	2356, 2369, 2385, 2437, 2461, 2478, 2496		
<code>\conf@tmpauthorlist</code> ..	2234, 2305, 2308, 2310		
<code>\conf@tmptitle</code>	2235, 2299, 2302, 2310		
<code>\conf@xshift</code>			
	.. 2228, 2242, 2252, 2253, 2313, 2321,		
	2331, 2340, 2353, 2361, 2366, 2374,		
	2381, 2391, 2400, 2407, 2412, 2440, 2492		
<code>\conf@yshift</code>	2229, 2243, 2313, 2321,		
	2331, 2340, 2353, 2361, 2366, 2374,		
	2381, 2391, 2400, 2407, 2412, 2440, 2493		
<code>\confcite</code>	1670,		
	1673, 2198, 2346, 2372, 2377, 2394, 2415		
<code>\confemptypaper</code>	2206, 2273, 2277, 2283		
<code>\confemptypapercite</code> ..	2184, 2270, 2274, 2285		
<code>\confproc@afterhyperref</code>	1883		
<code>\confproc@beforehyperref</code>	1879		
<code>\confproc@bib</code> ...	1646, 1652, 1658, 1666, 1763		
<code>\confproc@binding</code> ...	1563, 1566, 1567, 1746		
<code>\confproc@colorheaders</code>			
	.. 1795, 1921–1923, 1926, 2066, 2292, 2294		
<code>\confproc@geometry</code>	1726, 1813		
<code>\confproc@headers</code>			
	..... 1618, 1623, 1628, 1633, 1638, 1748		
<code>\confproc@hyperref</code>	1725, 1812		
<code>\confproc@papers</code>			
	..... 1574, 1581, 1589, 1597, 1606, 1747		
<code>\confproc@paperselec</code>	1751, 2241		
<code>\confproc@pdftkcreator</code> ...	1809, 2469, 2486		
<code>\confproc@pdftkfolder</code>	1806, 2459		
<code>\confproc@pdftkproducer</code> ..	1808, 2467, 2484		
<code>\confproc@pdftksubject</code> ...	1807, 2465, 2482		
<code>\confproc@tocnum</code>	1677, 1681, 1684, 1757		
<code>\confstylecheckauthor</code> ..	152, 342, 2236, 2306		
<code>\confstylechecktitle</code>			
	..... 150, 340, 2237, 2238, 2300		
<code>\contentsname</code> ..	144, 298, 367, 1903, 2099, 2102		
<code>\contentspage</code>	1938, 1944,		
	1945, 2034, 2041, 2049, 2050, 2056, 2057		
<code>\currenttoc</code>	355		
		D	
		<code>\DAFxaddress</code>	
		..... 120, 123, 128, 139, 282, 285, 289, 295	
		<code>\DAFxdate</code>	119, 128, 141, 281, 289, 296
		<code>\DAFxname</code>	117, 128, 139, 279, 289, 295
		<code>\date</code>	26, 136, 140, 296
		<code>\debug</code>	1526
		<code>\DeclareBoolOption</code>	1504, 1507,
			1513, 1516, 1518, 1520, 1521, 1523–1528
		<code>\DeclareComplementaryOption</code>	
			..... 1505, 1508, 1514, 1517, 1519
		<code>\DeclareDefaultOption</code>	1537
		<code>\DeclareStringOption</code>	1458,
			1506, 1509–1512, 1515, 1522, 1529–1536
		<code>\DeclareVoidOption</code>	
			.. 1460, 1462, 1464, 1466, 1468, 1470,
			1472, 1475, 1478, 1482, 1491, 1500, 1502
		<code>\define@key</code>	2492–2500
		<code>\definecolor</code> ...	113–115, 275–277, 1875–1878
		<code>\dottedcontents</code>	1941
		<code>\doublespace</code>	402
			E
		<code>\electronic</code>	1507
		<code>\evensidemargin</code>	1487, 1496
			F
		<code>\file</code>	722, 1023, 1152, 1175
		<code>\fillright</code>	1941
		<code>\footnote</code>	2447
		<code>\footrulewidth</code>	1915, 2163, 2165
		<code>\frontmattertocstyle</code>	159, 1960, 1975
			H
		<code>\headers</code>	1510
		<code>\headrulewidth</code>	1914, 2162
		<code>\Huge</code>	2201, 2223
		<code>\hyperref</code>	1533
		<code>\hypersetup</code>	1890
			I
		<code>\if@openright</code>	2063
		<code>\if@proc@BibNone</code>	
			.. 1643, 2112, 2194, 2216, 2330, 2352, 2406
		<code>\if@proc@BibRemoveCiteHdr</code>	1644, 1669
		<code>\if@proc@FancyHeadersExceptPapers</code> ...	
			..... 1616, 2069, 2072
		<code>\if@proc@FancyHeadersOnPapers</code> ..	1615, 2075
		<code>\if@proc@IncludeFullPDFs</code>	1571, 2312
		<code>\if@proc@IncludePDFs</code>	1569
		<code>\if@proc@letterpaper</code>	1481, 1729
		<code>\if@proc@ReplacePDFs</code>	1570, 2255
		<code>\if@proc@TocNumberingRight</code>	
			..... 1675, 1933, 1959, 1990, 2027
		<code>\if@proc@verbose</code>	
			..... 1712, 2327, 2351, 2397, 2421, 2434
		<code>\if@restonecol</code>	1850, 1869, 2104

<code>\iftwocolumn</code>	1835, 1854, 2100		1590, 1598, 1619, 1624, 1629, 1634,
<code>\ifconfproc@checkauthor</code> ..	1689, 1769, 2304		1647, 1653, 1659, 1662, 1671, 1678,
<code>\ifconfproc@checktitle</code> ...	1693, 1774, 2298		1682, 1690, 1691, 1694, 1695, 1698,
<code>\ifconfproc@debug</code>	1719, 1798		1699, 1702, 1703, 1707, 1709, 1716,
<code>\ifconfproc@electronic</code>	1553, 1743		1717, 1721, 1723, 2023, 2114, 2160, 2181
<code>\ifconfproc@movepagenumber</code>	1785, 1919	<code>\PackageWarning</code> .....	..... 1458, 1460, 1462, 1464, 1466,
<code>\ifconfproc@pdftk</code>	1804, 1817, 2449		1468, 1470, 1537, 1605, 1637, 1684, 2503
<code>\ifconfproc@showmarginlines</code>	1697, 1790, 2159	<code>\pagenumbering</code>	2026
<code>\ifconfproc@showpapernumber</code>	1701, 1780, 2291	<code>\pagestyle</code> .	1913, 1929, 1931, 2069, 2070, 2161
<code>\ifconfproc@twocolbib</code>	1760, 2117	<code>\paperauthors</code>	445, 453
<code>\ifconfproc@twocolindex</code>	1764, 1833	<code>\paperauthorstyle</code> .....	..... 149, 333, 334, 336, 338, <u>2092</u> , 2095
<code>\ifconfproc@twocoltoc</code>	1754, 1828	<code>\paperbookmark</code>	938
<code>\ifconfproc@twosidepapers</code>	1706, 1739, 2431	<code>\papercite</code>	449, 453
<code>\ifconfproc@verbose</code> .	1714, 1727, 1801, 2471	<code>\paperheight</code>	1484, 1493
<code>\includepdf</code>	142,	<code>\paperid</code>	421, <u>421</u> , 422, 424, 427, 428, <u>439</u> , 944, 951
	364, 2313, 2321, 2331, 2340, 2353, 2361,	<code>\paperindex</code>	446, 453
	2366, 2374, 2381, 2391, 2400, 2407, 2412	<code>\paperpagenum</code>	448, 452
<code>\indexname</code> ...	<u>146</u> , <u>300</u> , 1838, 1857, <u>1905</u> , 2155	<code>\PAPERPATH</code> .....	. 27, <u>147</u> , <u>301</u> , <u>2183</u> , 2192, 2214, 2314,
<code>\insertindex</code>	82, <u>225</u> , 436, <u>436</u> , 2150		2320, 2322, 2324, 2332, 2338, 2341,
			2347, 2354, 2360, 2362, 2364, 2367,
			2373, 2375, 2378, 2383, 2389, 2392,
			2395, 2401, 2403, 2408, 2410, 2413, 2416
		<code>\paperref</code>	447, 453
		<code>\papers</code>	<u>1506</u>
		<code>\paperselec</code>	<u>1512</u>
		<code>\paperswitch</code>	441, <u>441</u> , 443, 447, 456,
			467, 483, 495, 512–517, 929, 931, 953, <u>2110</u>
		<code>\papertitle</code>	444, 453
		<code>\papertitlestyle</code>	148,
			331, 332, 336, 337, 339, <u>2091</u> , 2095, 2096
		<code>\paperwidth</code>	1485, 1494
		<code>\pdfbookmark</code>	34, 35, 161, 162,
			198, 361, 362, 370, 390, 454, 463, 476–
			479, 490, 491, 503–505, 915, 916, 2099, 2250
		<code>\PDFpagestyle</code>	<u>2074</u> , 2319, 2323,
			2337, 2346, 2359, 2363, 2372, 2377,
			2388, 2394, 2396, 2402, 2404, 2409, 2415
		<code>\pdftk</code>	<u>1528</u>
		<code>\pdftkcreator</code>	<u>1532</u>
		<code>\pdftkinfoall</code>	1818, 1819, 2450, 2452, 2454, 2457
		<code>\pdftkinfile</code>	1820, 2459–2470
		<code>\pdftkproducer</code>	<u>1531</u>
		<code>\pdftksubject</code>	<u>1529</u> , <u>1530</u>
		<code>\PICPATH</code>	<u>302</u>
		<code>\PICTPATH</code>	142, 302, 364
		<code>\printed</code>	<u>1508</u>
		<code>\proc@binding</code>	1561, 1564, 1566, 1899, 1901, 2253
		<code>\procbibfile</code>	<u>305</u> , 435
		<code>\procbibintro</code>	2123, 2145
		<code>\proccfoot</code>	129, 290, <u>1911</u> , <u>1926</u> , 2067, 2157, 2293
		<code>\procchead</code>	21, 126, 288, <u>1907</u> , 1922, 2156
		<code>\proccite</code>	<u>1669</u>

L

<code>\LaTeXxShift</code> ..	107, 181, 186, 192, 200, 208,		
	214, 269, 452, 457, 468, 484, 496, 930, 2081		
<code>\LaTeXyShift</code>	108, 109, 181, 186, 192, 200, 208, 214,		
	270, 271, 452, 457, 468, 484, 496, 930, 2082		
<code>\lfoot</code>	<u>1924</u>		
<code>\lhead</code>	<u>1921</u>		

M

<code>\mainmatter</code>	<u>171</u> , <u>416</u> , <u>2022</u>		
<code>\mainmattertocstyle</code>	<u>172</u> , 317, <u>417</u> , <u>1990</u>		
<code>\maketitle</code>	36, 163, 363		
<code>\movepagenumber</code>	<u>1525</u>		
<code>\myaddhruletotoc</code>	306, 326, 327		
<code>\myaddthickhruletotoc</code>	308, 320, 321		

N

<code>\newblock</code>	<u>2144</u>		
<code>\nInfoKey</code>	1206		
<code>\nInfoValue</code>	1207		
<code>\npages</code>	<u>2093</u>		
<code>\npagesfile</code>	1572,		
	1579, 1587, 1595, 1604, 1610, 2256, 2429		
<code>\npagespreamble</code>	<u>2021</u>		
<code>\npdftk</code>	1227		

O

<code>\onecolbib</code>	<u>1517</u>		
<code>\onecoltoc</code>	<u>1514</u>		
<code>\onecolumn</code>	1850, 1869, 2100, 2152		
<code>\otherpagestyle</code>	<u>2068</u> , <u>2071</u>		

P

<code>\package</code>	2447		
<code>\PackageInfo</code>		
	.. 1555, 1558, 1565, 1567, 1575, 1582,		

<code>\procdays</code>	45, 64, 173, <u>173</u> , 206, 310, 419, <u>419</u> , 425, 875, 2106	
<code>\ProcessKeyvalOptions</code>	1552	
<code>\procfootvskip</code> 130, 291, <u>1916</u> , 1926, 2066, 2292		
<code>\procinsertpaper</code>	192, 452, <u>2502</u>	
<code>\proclfoot</code>	<u>1910</u>	
<code>\proclhead</code>	22, 127, 128, 289, <u>1906</u> , 1921	
<code>\procmarginlines</code>	<u>2159</u> , 2318, 2323, 2336, 2345, 2358, 2363, 2371, 2376, 2387, 2393, 2402, 2409, 2414	
<code>\procoptfootvskip</code>	131, <u>292</u> , <u>1918</u> , 1927, 2067, 2293	
<code>\procpaper</code>	47, 52, 58, 66, 72, 181, <u>181</u> , 186, 200, 208, 214, 457, 468, 484, 496, 930, <u>2227</u> , 2505, 2506	
<code>\procpdfauthor</code>	16, 24, 122, 137, <u>284</u> , 294, <u>1886</u> , 1892	
<code>\procpdfsubject</code> 18, 22, 124, 127, <u>286</u> , <u>1888</u> , 1894		
<code>\procpdftitle</code> . 17, 25, 123, 138, <u>285</u> , <u>1887</u> , 1893		
<code>\procrfoot</code>	<u>1912</u>	
<code>\procrhead</code>	<u>1909</u> , <u>1923</u>	
<code>\proctoctypeauthor</code>	335, <u>2094</u> , 2263, 2316, 2334, 2343, 2356, 2369, 2385	
R		
<code>\rfoot</code>	<u>1925</u>	
<code>\rhead</code>	<u>1923</u>	
S		
<code>\session</code>	46, 57, 65, 175, 180, 199, 207, 313, 420, <u>420</u> , 423, 426, 885, 2108	
<code>\shiftsafourpaper</code>	1497	
<code>\shiftsletterpaper</code>	1488	
<code>\showmarginlines</code>	<u>1523</u>	
<code>\showpapernumber</code>	<u>1524</u>	
		T
<code>\tableofcontents</code>	40, 167, 412, <u>2097</u>	
<code>\texorpdfstring</code>	148, 149, 332–334, 336, 338, 339, 367, 2092, 2095	
<code>\TEXTPATH</code>	<u>303</u> , 418	
<code>\thebibliography</code>	<u>2112</u>	
<code>\theconf@firstpage</code>	2428	
<code>\theconf@lastpage</code>	2427	
<code>\theconf@npages</code>	2220, 2256, 2260, 2265, 2269, 2272, 2276, 2279, 2285, 2326, 2350, 2392, 2401, 2408, 2413, 2429, 2436	
<code>\theconf@switch</code>	2294, 2317, 2335, 2344, 2357, 2370, 2386, 2443	
<code>\theindex</code>	<u>1833</u>	
<code>\thelocnpages</code>	2279, 2283	
<code>\thenpagespreamble</code>	2258, 2259, 2287, 2289, 2426	
<code>\thisotherpagestyle</code>	389, 2071, 2077	
<code>\threecolindex</code>	<u>1519</u>	
<code>\title</code>	25, <u>134</u> , <u>138</u> , <u>295</u>	
<code>\titlecontents</code> . 318, 324, 1934, 1942, 1948, 1953, 1961, 1967, 1976, 1982, 1992, 1998, 2007, 2013, 2029, 2036, 2046, 2053		
<code>\tocmattertocstyle</code>	<u>1959</u>	
<code>\tocnum</code>	<u>1515</u>	
<code>\twocolbib</code>	<u>1516</u>	
<code>\twocolindex</code>	<u>1518</u>	
<code>\twocoltoc</code>	<u>1513</u>	
<code>\twocolumn</code>	2104, 2117	
		V
<code>\verbose</code>	<u>1527</u>	
		W
<code>\WordxShift</code>	110, 272, 2083	
<code>\WordyShift</code>	111, 273, 2084	

Change History

0.3	papers (no ref printed yet)	121
General: initial version	<code>\tableofcontents</code> : redefined	111
0.4a	<code>\thebibliography</code> : redefined to insert <code>\setbibitems's</code> code	112
General: move formatting issues in re-defined commands	0.4b	
<code>\backmatter</code> : now includes <code>\backmattertocstyle</code>	General: bibliography: removed item contain- ing introductory paragraph	56
<code>\bibname</code> : remove formatting	changes from Will Robertson's advices	1
renamed from <code>\procbibname</code>	Layout: set <code>\footskip</code>	27, 30, 39, 105
<code>\indexname</code> : remove formatting	Pkg: <code>mathptmx</code> replaces <code>times</code>	13, 30, 39
renamed from <code>\procindexname</code>	Pkg: <code>nth</code> for superscript ordinals	4, 13, 30, 39, 40
<code>\mainmatter</code> : now includes <code>\mainmattertocstyle</code>	uses <code>\vspace</code> instead of <code>\vskip</code>	41
<code>\procinsertpaper</code> : manages 1-page long	<code>\hypersetup</code> : Only evaluated At Begin Doc-	

ument	105	Layout: all commands replaced by use of geometry package	105
\paperauthorstyle: Format: changing		Options: added paperselec	20
\it to \itshape	111	Options: changed papers option values	20
\proccfoot: remove \vspace	105	Scripts: Unix papers_split_preamble.sh script added	87
use \vspace instead of \vskip	105	Scripts: Unix papersinfo.sh script added	87
\title: Pkg: nth for superscript ordinals	41	papers: draft option replaced by draft value for option papers	93
0.4c		\backmatter: added footer redefinition	110
\procinsertpaper: author is back in bookmark (missing #9 arg in \pagecommand, bug in v0.4a)	121	\proccfoot: empty \proclfoot and \procrfoot added	105
0.4d		\procinsertpaper: now uses \procpaper	121
General: re-organize changes history (use 'macro' environment)	1	\proclhead: added empty \proclhead and \procrhead	105
0.4e		replaced \proclhead by \prochead	105
General: clean up the uses of \DescribeMacro and \begin{macro}{} commands	1	0.7	
Layout: use the geometry package	30, 39	General: changed the package default option set (simpler examples)	96
0.4f		Doc code: clarified with colordoc	3
General: bug: draft removes bookmarks	19, 22, 62	Doc code: clarified with grey/black colors (incremental learning)	3
bug: draft removes papers from bookmarks	5	Doc: added example1empty.tex, a simpler examples	19
papers: bug: draft removes bookmarks	93	Doc: added 'danger' margin pictogram for important things	3
0.5		Doc: added 'what's new in version 0.7' margin notes	3
General: draft does not remove papers from the bookmarks anymore	5	Doc: added a summary documentation (confproc-short.tex/.pdf)	3
added \proccfoot length	41	Doc: re-organized examples for incremental learning	19
added \prochead command	41	Pkg: (New) geometry option to directly pass options to geometry package	101
Layout: L ^A T _E X x and y shift values updated (geometry package)	39	Pkg: (New) hyperref option to directly pass options to hyperref package	101
Layout: options for geometry package not directly provided to the class	39	Pkg: new empty value for papers option (not using pdfpages)	97
0.6		Pkg: now uses \PackageInfo and \PackageWarning for proper package info and warnings	99
General: draft does not remove the bookmarks anymore	22	Pkg: now uses kvoptions and kvoptions-patch packages to manage confproc package options as key/values	92
added buildproc2.sh	78	Pkg: now uses xifthen package and \ifthenelse command to clarify code	92
added exportIndividualPDFs.sh	83	renamed buildproc2.sh into buildprocelpb.sh	78
added paperssplitpreamble.sh	86	\confemptypaper: prints an empty paper with its own data (replacing draft option)	115
added removeLaTeXcmds.sh	85	\confemptypapercite: prints an empty paper with its own data including bib items (replacing draft option)	114
Default values for Word or L ^A T _E X x and y shift values no more set depending on the document format	110	pdftk: option added to generate individual .pdftk instructions for each paper	95
Doc: added diagram with suggested building steps	64		
Doc: moved scripts after the full example and before implementation	69		
Example: added example2custom.tex	27		
Example: red color is the default for customization of proceedings example (example1empty.tex)	16		
Example: renamed example.tex into example1empty.tex	16		
Layout options: added checktitle , check-author , showpapernum , showmarginlines , and colorheaders	23		

<code>debug</code> : now for the developer (differs from and complements <code>verbose</code>)	95	<code>headers/footers color</code> (for proofchecking)	95
<code>verbose</code> : now for the user; all purpose (differs from and complements <code>debug</code>)	95	<code>movepagenumber</code> : new option that moves down each paper's page number added with <code>showpapernumber</code> (for proofchecking)	95
<code>checkauthor</code> : new option that superimposes each paper's author list in color (for proofchecking)	95	<code>\procpaper</code> : counts each paper's number of pages and prints output into <code>.npc</code> file	119
<code>checktitle</code> : new option that superimposes each paper's title in color (for proofchecking)	95	<code>manage 1-page long document</code>	117
<code>showmarginlines</code> : new option used to add left, right, up and down margin lines with colors (for layout checking)	95	<code>manages \geq 3-pages long documents (no more limited to 8)</code>	118
<code>showpapernumber</code> : new option that adds each paper's page number (for proofchecking)	95	now has only 1 mandatory argument (file name) + 8 optional arguments	115
<code>colorheaders</code> : new option used to set the		now uses <code>keyval</code> package syntax	115
		replaces <code>\procinsertpaper</code>	115
	0.8	General: tested with TeXLive 2011 on August 1st, 2011	8